

السؤال الأول (المحادثة)

• يجب عند حل سؤال المحادثة مراعاة الآتي:

- ١) يجب ان نقرأ السطر المقدمة ثم نقرأ المحادثة كاملة حتى نتعرف على موضوع المحادثة.
- ٢) المحادثة عبارة عن سؤال وإجابة، لذلك لابد أن نعرف جيدا طريقة تكوين السؤال وهي:

← قاعدة تكوين السؤال

...? فعل أساسي + فاعل + فعل مساعد + أداة استفهام

٣) نبدأ بأداة الاستفهام ونحددها من خلال ما تسأل عنه هذه الأداة (مكان - زمان - مدة - شخص)

٤) نبحث عن فعل مساعد بعد أداة الاستفهام:

أ) إما أن يكون موجود بالإجابة مثل -am - is - are / will / can - should / has - have

ب) إذا لم نجده نشترك فعل مساعد (do - does) في المضارع أو (did) في حالة الماضي ونرجع الفعل إلى المصدر

Ex: What will you study?

الزمن هنا (مستقبل) لذلك استخدمنا الفعل المساعد will الموجود بالإجابة. I will study English.

EX: Where did you go yesterday?

هنا الزمن (ماضي بسيط) لذلك استخدمنا الفعل المساعد did. I went to the zoo yesterday.

٥) أما إذا كانت الإجابة (Yes / No) يجب أن يبدأ السؤال بفعل مساعد (هل). (الفعل المساعد يكون حسب الزمن).

٦) نقوم بتحويل الضمان من السؤال إلى الإجابة. (you) تحول إلى (I). أما باقي الضمان لا تتغير.

٧) يجب مراجعة الجزء الخاص بالوظائف اللغوية جيدا.

1- Finish the following dialogue:

1) Ali and Hany are talking about sports

- Ali : What are you going to do?
 Hany : I'm going to exercise.
 Ali : **(1) What's your favourite sport?**
 Hany : My favourite sport is tennis.
 Ali : How often do you play it?
 Hany : **(2) I play it twice a week.**
 Ali : **(3) Who do you play it with?**
 Hany : I play it with my friends.
 Ali : Is it an exciting sport?
 Hany : **(4) Yes, it is.**

زمن المحادثة: مضارع بسيط

2) Fayeze and Hany are talking about the mid-year holiday.

- Fayeze : Where are you going to spend the mid-year holiday?
 Hany : **(1) I'm going to spend the mid-year holiday in Hurghada.**
 Fayeze : Hurghada! It is a very nice city. **(2) Who will you go with?**
 Hany : I'll go with my friends.
 Fayeze : How will you go there?
 Hany : **(3) I will go there by car.**
 Fayeze : **(4) Where will you stay there?**
 Hany : We will stay in the youth hostel.
 Fayeze : I hope you will have a nice time there.

زمن المحادثة: مستقبل

3) Amir and Omar met after the summer holiday.

- Amir : Where did you spend your last summer holiday?
 Omar : In Hurghada.
 Amir : **(1) Who did you go with?**
 Omar : I went with my family.
 Amir : Where did you stay there?
 Omar : **(2) We stayed at a nice hotel.**
 Amir : **(3) What did you buy?**
 Omar : I bought some souvenirs.
 Amir : Did you enjoy visiting Hurghada?
 Omar : **(4) Yes, I did.**

زمن المحادثة: ماضي بسيط

4) A man is buying a ticket at a train station:

- Man : Good morning. **(1) Can I book a train ticket to Luxor?**
 Assistant : To Luxor? Of course. **(2) Would you like a single or a return?**
 Man : A return, please. I'm coming back on Tuesday.
 Assistant : That's LE 100. The next train leaves in 30 minutes.
 Man : **(3) Could you tell me which platform the train leaves from?**
 Assistant : The train leaves from platform 2.
 Man : **(4) Thank you.**

شراء تذكرة في القطار

5) Ramy and Mustafa are talking about the next mid-year holiday.

- Ramy : Pleased to meet you, Mustafa.
 Mustafa : **(1) Pleased to meet you, too.**
 Ramy : **(2) Where will you spend the next mid-year holiday?**
 Mustafa : I will spend the next mid-year holiday in Hurghada.
 Ramy : **(3) Why? (OR) Why will you spend it there?**
 Mustafa : Because it is a wonderful place for a holiday.
 Ramy : What activities are there to do?
 Mustafa : **(4) I will go windsurfing and snorkeling.**
 Ramy : Have a great time.

زمن المحادثة: مستقبل

6) A man is buying a ticket at a train station.

- Passenger : Good morning. I'd like a return ticket to Cairo.
(1) What time is the next train?
 Assistant : The next train is at 9:30.
 Passenger : How much is that, please?
 Assistant : **(2) It's 100 LE.**
 Passenger : **(3) How long does it take?**
 Assistant : It takes about two hours.
 Passenger : Could you tell me which platform the train leaves from?
 Assistant : **(4) Platform 5.**

شراء تذكرة في القطار

السؤال الثاني (المواقف)

يجب مراجعة الجزء الخاص بالوظائف اللغوية جيداً

2- Write what you would say in the following situations: (3m)

1- You want to book a ticket for the train from Cairo to Luxor. You are coming back on Thursday.

✓ Can I book a return ticket to Luxor, please? (شراء أو حجز تذكرة قطار)

2- You are taking a bus from Cairo to Alexandria. You want to know how long you will spend on the bus.

✓ How long does the bus from Cairo to Alexandria take? (شراء أو حجز تذكرة قطار)

3- You want to know the cost of a single ticket to Tanta .

✓ How much is a single ticket to Tanta, please? (السؤال عن سعر التذكرة)

4- The assistant asks you what kind of ticket you want.

✓ I'd like a single ticket, please. (الرد وتحديد نوع التذكرة)

5- You ask the assistant about the time of the next train.

✓ What time is the next train? (السؤال عن موعد القطار)

6- Your brother didn't study for the exam yesterday.

✓ You should have studied hard for the exam. (النصيحة أو التوصيات في الماضي)

7- You regret losing your English book.

✓ I should have been careful.. (التعبير عن الندم)

8- You blame your brother for breaking your glasses.

✓ You shouldn't have broken my glasses.

✓ You should have been careful. (اللوم أو العتاب)

9- Someone wants you to try something you don't like. Refuse politely.

✓ I'm not interested, thanks. (عدم قبول التوصيات)

10-You borrowed your friend's phone and you broke it.

✓ I'm really sorry. I should have been careful... (التعبير عن الندم)

11-You have just finished the hardest test that you have ever done. Your mother asks you how the test was.

✓ It was extremely difficult. (تقوية الرأي)

12-You visited England in the winter. It was the coldest place that you have been. A friend asks you what the weather was like.

✓ It was extremely cold. (تقوية الرأي)

13-You wanted to go to the beach today, but your parents say that it is too windy.

✓ How terrible! (أخبار سيئة)

✓ I wish that it wasn't windy. (التمني)

14-You see a news report about poor people who live in Asia. You would like to be able to help them.

✓ If I were rich, I would help them. (OR) I wish I could help these people. (التمني)

15-You would like to ask a teacher when he / she started working at the school.

✓ Could you please tell me when you started working at the school?

(السؤال بطريقة مهذبة)

16-You like to ask a teacher to explain why it is colder in winter than in the summer.

✓ Could you please tell me why it is colder in the winter than in the summer?

(السؤال بطريقة مهذبة)

17-You need to borrow your friend's laptop.

✓ Could I please borrow your laptop?

(الطلب بطريقة مهذبة)

18-You think that this lesson is very interesting. You want to know what your friend thinks of it.

✓ What do you think of the lesson?

(طلب الرأي)

19-There's a new café in your area. You want to know what your friend thinks of it.

✓ What do you think of the new café?

(السؤال عن الرأي)

20-A friend says that he / she thinks that the last lesson was the most interesting that you have had.

✓ I couldn't agree with you more. (OR) I'm afraid I totally disagree.

(الموافقة على الرأي أو الرفض)

21-You see a photo of a modern museum. Your friend says that he / she doesn't like it, but you have another opinion.

✓ I'm afraid I totally disagree..

(عدم الموافقة على الرأي)

22-A friend starts to read you an interesting news story, but then suddenly stops.

✓ Really? Go on ! (OR) Fantastic. Tell me more!

(تشجيع شخص على الاستمرار في الحديث)

23-A friend tells you that he / she had an interesting morning. First, he / she went to the park. You want to know more.

✓ Really? Go on ! (OR) Fantastic. Tell me more!

(تشجيع شخص على الاستمرار في الحديث)

24-You hear that scientists have found a new medicine which will help many people.

✓ How wonderful !

(سماع أخبار جيدة)

25-Your parents say that they are taking you to the beach tomorrow.

✓ How wonderful! (OR) Really? I can't believe it.

(سماع أخبار جيدة - مندهش)

26-You see people leaving rubbish on a beach.

✓ How terrible ! Why do you do this?

(سماع أخبار سيئة)

✓ (or) You shouldn't leave rubbish on the beach.

(نصيحة)

27-A friend tells you that you have won a prize.

✓ How wonderful !

(سماع أخبار جيدة)

28-Your friend asks you when your father was born. You aren't sure, but you give an answer.

✓ He was born in about 1979. (OR) About 40 years ago.

(إعطاء تواريخ لست متأكد منها)

29-Your cousin asks you when your school was built.

✓ It was built about 50 years ago.

(إعطاء تواريخ لست متأكد منها)

30-You hear that a tourist was lost in the desert, but he has been just found.

✓ Thank goodness for that.

(التعبير عن الشعور بالارتياح)

مواقف إضافية

31-You are asked about your destination.

✓ I'm going to Aswan. / My destination is Aswan.

(شراء / حجز تذكرة في القطار)

32-you want to know which platform the train leaves from.

✓ Could you tell me which platform the train leaves from?

(شراء / حجز تذكرة في القطار)

33-Your classmate is trying to persuade you to go to the club, but you refuse.

✓ I'm not interested, thanks.

(تبرير / شرح اختيار في الماضي)

34-Your friend is addicted to smoking. Advise him.

✓ You shouldn't have started smoking.

(توصيات في الماضي)

35-A friend was up late as he drank much coffee. Make past recommendation

✓ You shouldn't have drunk much coffee.

(توصيات في الماضي)

36-You are asked about the disadvantages of smoking.

✓ Smoking causes lung diseases.

37-You smoked a cigarette and now you feel ill. You regret it.

✓ I shouldn't have smoked that cigarette.

(التوصيات / الندم في الماضي)

38-You hear that scientists have found a new medicine which will help many people.

✓ Great/ Thanks goodness for that.

(التعبير عن الشعور بالارتياح / الفرح)

39-A friend asks you about an interesting film you have both have just watched.

✓ It was extremely interesting.

(إبداء رأي / وتقوية الرأي)

40-You express your strong opinion of the electrician's job.

✓ It's really important.

(إبداء رأي / وتقوية الرأي)

41-You would like to ask your friend when he started working at hospital.

✓ Could you please tell me when you started working at hospital.

(السؤال بطريقة مهذبة)

42-Ask your father politely about his plan for the summer holiday

✓ Could you please tell me about your plans for the summer holiday?

43-You want to know a tourist's opinion about the pyramids.

✓ What do you think of the pyramids?

(السؤال عن الرأي)

44-Your friend says that the waterfalls are amazing. you completely agree.

✓ I'm afraid I'm totally disagree.

(عدم الموافقة على الرأي)

45-Someone thinks that Wadi Rayyan waterfalls are man-made wonders.

✓ I'm afraid I'm totally disagree.

(عدم الموافقة على الرأي)

46-Noha tells you about an exciting film. you want to know more.

✓ Fantastic! Tell me more!

(التشجيع على الاستمرار في الحديث)

47-You borrowed your friend's phone and you broke it.

✓ I'm sorry for breaking your phone.

(تقديم الاعتذار)

48-You need to borrow your friend's laptop.

✓ Could I borrow your laptop?

(السؤال بطريقة مهذبة)

49-Your friend said a snake had escaped from the zoo and nobody knew where it was. Respond to this news.

✓ How terrible!

(أخبار سيئة)

50-A friend asks you when the first car was made.

✓ The first car was made about 200 years ago.

(إعطاء تواريخ لست متأكداً منها)

51-You're asked when dinosaurs first lived. You aren't sure of the answer.

✓ **Dinosaurs first lived about 65 million years ago.** (إعطاء تواريخ لست متأكداً منها)

52-The news said that a bad storm is coming, but now they say it has moved away.

✓ **Phew! / What a relief! / Thank goodness for that.** (التعبير عن الشعور بالارتياح)

53-Your mother tells you that there was a fire on your neighbour's shop.

✓ **How terrible !** (أخبار سيئة)

54-Your friend Azza tells you that her oldest cousin is going to have a baby.

✓ **How wonderful !** (أخبار جيدة)

55-You hear that a ship sank in the sea but the police saved the passengers.

✓ **Thank goodness for that !** (التعبير عن الشعور بالارتياح)

56-You would like to ask a friend what his favourite hobby is.

✓ **What is your favourite hobby?**

✓ **Could you please tell me about your favourite hobby?** (السؤال بطريقة مهذبة)

57-You are asked about your opinion of Cairo tower.

✓ **I think it is extremely wonderful !** (السؤال والتعبير عن الرأي)

السؤال الرابع (القصة)

A) Match the items in column A with those in column B: (2M)

(A)	(B)
1) Black Beauty	a) was the horse Lady Anne liked to ride. كان الحصان المفضل لدى "الدي أن"
2) Ginger	b) said, "if they don't tighten the reins more, I will do what they ask me." قالت "إذا لم يربطوا اللجام أكثر من ذلك سأفعل ما يطلبونه مني"
3) York	c) was Earl Smythe's helper. كان المساعد لدى "ايرل سمايث"
4) Lady Smythe	d) liked the latest fashion. كانت تحب أحدث الموضة

ملحوظة: الإجابات مرتبة

(A)	(B)
1) Black Beauty	a) was taken to a market for horses. تم أخذه إلى سوق الخيول
2) Mr Barry	b) was a rich man who bought Black Beauty. كان رجلاً غنياً اشترى بلاك بيوتي
3) Mr Barry's friend	c) suggested buying good food for Black Beauty for a few weeks. اقترح شراء طعام جيد لـ "بلاك بيوتي" لأسابيع قليلة
4) Filcher	d) was accused of stealing the horses' food. تم اتهامه بسرقة طعام الخيول

(A)	(B)
1) Jerry Barker	a) was the best owner and a kind taxi driver. كان أفضل مالك وسائق عطوف
2) Captain	b) was the horse that went out with the taxi carriage in the morning. كان الحصان الذي خرج في الصباح في عربة التاكسي
3) Harry, Jerry's son	c) always helped to look after Black Beauty. كان دائماً يساعد في الاعتناء بـ بلاك بيوتي
4) Black Beauty	d) was pleased with his new owner. كان مسروراً من الهالك الجديد

(A)	(B)
1) Polly	a) was Jerry's wife. كانت زوجة "جيري"
2) Ginger	b) wasn't able to run very fast after the fall. كانت غير قادرة على الجري بعد السقوط
3) Jerry	c) believed that a pound wouldn't help if it made the horse tired. كان يعتقد أن الجنيه لن يساعد لو تسبب في أن يكون الحصان متعباً
4) Black Beauty	d) was given food before walking for many kilometres. أعطي طعاماً قبل المشي لمسافة طويلة

(A)	(B)
1) The doctor	a) told Jerry he should stop driving taxi. أخبر "جيري" بضرورة التوقف عن قيادة التاكسي
2) skinner	b) was also a taxi driver. كان أيضاً سائق تاكسي
3) Mr Thoroughgood	c) took Beauty to a large field to give him good food. أخذ بيوتي إلى حقل كبير لإعطائه طعام جيد
4) Black Beauty	d) had easier work in the end. حصل على عمل سهل في نهاية القصة

(A)	(B)
1) Jerry	a) moved to a cottage with his family so that he could work for Mrs Fowler. انتقل إلى كوخ مع عائلته للعمل لدى "السيدة فاوولر"
2) Black Beauty	b) became healthy again after Mr Thoroughgood and his grandson looked after him. أصبح بصحة جيدة بعد أن اعتنى به السيد ثورجود وحفيده
3) Joe Green	c) recognised Black Beauty from his white foot and white star. تعرف على بيوتي من القدم البيضاء والنجمة البيضاء في جبينه
4) Skinner	d) did not give Black Beauty enough to eat. لم يكن يعطي بيوتي طعاماً كافياً

أسئلة التفكير النقدي في القصة

1) In what ways was Earlshall Park better than Birtwick Park?

كيف كان إيرلشال بارك أفضل من بيرتويك بارك؟

✓ It was much bigger and more modern.

كان أكبر وأحدث من بيرتويك بارك

2) Why did Lady Smythe use special reins to keep the horses' heads held high?

لماذا كانت السيدة سمايث تستخدم اللجام الخاص لرفع رؤوس الخيول لأعلى؟

✓ Because it was the latest fashion.

لأنها كانت أحدث الموضة

3) Why did some people use reins for horses?

لماذا يستخدم بعض الناس اللجام؟

✓ To control horses.

لكي يتحكموا في الخيول.

4) Why do you think the reins were uncomfortable?

هل تعتقد أن اللجام كانت مريحة؟

✓ Because they kept the horses heads' held high all the time.

لأنها كانت تجعل رؤوس الخيول مرتفعة لأعلى طوال الوقت.

5) Why was it very difficult (or impossible) for the horses to pull a carriage up a hill?

لماذا كان من الصعب على الخيول جر العربة لأعلى التل؟

✓ Because they could not put their heads down when they were wearing the reins.

لأنهم لم يستطيعوا أن يخفضوا رؤوسهم عند ارتدائهم لتلك الأجمة.

6) Do you think that Lady Smythe was unkind? Why?

هل تعتقد أن السيدة سمايث كانت غير عظوفة؟

✓ Yes, because she used the special reins although they were uncomfortable.

نعم.. لأنها استخدمت اللجام الخاص بالرغم من أنه غير مريح.

7) How do you know that Ginger and Beauty were hardworking?

كيف تعرف أن جينجر وبلاك بيوتي كانا يعملان بجد؟

✓ Although they didn't like the reins at all, they continued to work hard.

بالرغم من أنهما لم يحببا اللجام مطلقاً، إلا أنهما استمرا في العمل بجد.

8) Do you think that Ginger was right to start to kick? Why / Why not?

هل تعتقد أن جينجر كانت على حق في أن ترفض مرة أخرى؟ لماذا؟

✓ Yes, because the reins were uncomfortable.

نعم، لأن اللجام كان غير مريح لها.

9) How do we know that York cared about Ginger and Black Beauty?

كيف تعرف أن يورك كان يعتني بجينجر وبلاك بيوتي؟

✓ He was angry about the special reins. He helped them when they were hurt.

كان غاضباً بخصوص اللجام الخاص. وأيضاً ساعدهم عندما أصيبوا.

10) Why do you think York couldn't make Earl Smythe's wife change her mind for using the special reins with horses?

لماذا تعتقد أن "يورك" لم يستطع أن يجعل زوجة إيرل سمايث تغير رأيها في استخدام اللجام الخاص مع الخيول؟

✓ Because he was just a helper who didn't have the right to do so.

لأنه كان مجرد مساعد ليس لديه الحق لفعل ذلك.

11) If you had a horse, would you use a strong rein to control it? Why?

لو كان لديك حصان، فهل كنت ستستخدم لجاماً قوياً للتحكم فيه؟ لماذا؟

✓ No, I would use a comfortable rein in order not to harm my horse.

لا.. لفتت سأستعمل لجاماً مريحاً لكي لا أؤذي حصاني.

12) Do you think that Black Beauty was angry with Ginger because he was hurt? Why?

هل تعتقد أن بلاك بيوتي كان غاضباً من جينجر عندما أصيب؟ لماذا؟

✓ No, because he realised that Ginger did this because the reins were very uncomfortable.

لا، لأنه أدرك أن جينجر فعلت ذلك لأن اللجام كان غير مريح.

- 13) How do you think Ginger and Black Beauty become hurt? كيف أصيبت جينجر وبلاك بيوتي؟
 ✓ When they tightened the reins more, Ginger began to kick so hard that she fell to the ground and they were both hurt. عندما ربطوا اللجام أكثر بدأت جينجر ترفص بشدة حتى سقطوا على الأرض واصيبوا كلاهما.
- 14) Why do you think Earl Smythe said that he might not get much money for Ginger? لماذا تعتقد أن إيرل سمايث قال أنه من المحتمل ألا يحصل على مال كثير مقابل جينجر؟
 ✓ Because Ginger's knees were badly damaged. She also didn't always do what her owners want. لأن ركبتيهما تضررتا بشدة، كما أنها لم تكن دائماً تفعل ما يطلبه مالكوها.
- 15) Do you think the Earl believed that Black Beauty was better than Ginger? Why? هل تعتقد أن الأيرل اعتقد أن بلاك بيوتي كان أفضل من جينجر؟ لماذا؟
 ✓ Yes, because he was sure he would get good money for him only. نعم.. لأنه كان متأكداً من الحصول على أموال جيدة مقابل بلاك بيوتي فقط.
- 16) Do you think the Earl really loved the horses? Why? هل تعتقد أن "إيرل" كان يحب الخيول؟
 ✓ No, as he sold them when they couldn't pull the carriage. لا.. لأنه باعهم عندما لم يستطيعوا جر العربة.
- 17) How do we know that Black Beauty's first owner in Bath knew that he was clever? كيف نعرف أن مالك بلاك بيوتي في مدينة "باث" كان يعرف أن بلاك بيوتي ماهراً؟
 ✓ Because he let bad drivers take him as he knew that he would behave well. لأنه كان يدع السائقين السيئين يأخذوا بلاك بيوتي.. لأنه يعرف أن بلاك بيوتي سوف يُحسن التصرف.
- 18) Do you think that Filcher deserve to be arrested? Why? هل تعتقد أن فيلتشر استحق أن يقبض عليه؟
 ✓ Yes, because he stole Black Beauty's food. نعم.. لأنه سرق طعام بلاك بيوتي.
- 19) Why do you think it is important to watch animal workers carefully? لماذا تعتقد أنه من المهم أن نراقب العاملين مع الحيوانات بحرص؟
 ✓ To make sure they are honest. لنتأكد انهم أمانة.
 ✓ Because they might steal animal's food. لأنهم قد يسرقوا طعام الحيوانات.
- 20) How does food affect on a working animal? Give an example. كيف يؤثر الطعام على الحيوان العامل؟ اعطي مثالاً
 ✓ When Black Beauty was given less food, he had less energy and felt exhausted all the time. عندما أعطي بلاك بيوتي طعاماً أقل أصبح لديه طاقة أقل ومرهقاً طوال اليوم.
- 21) Why do you think that the men who thought of buying Beauty checked him well? لماذا تعتقد أن الناس الذين كانوا يفكرون في شراء بلاك بيوتي في السوق قاموا بفحصه جيداً؟
 As they needed to make sure he was a good horse. لأنهم أرادوا أن يتأكدوا أنه حصان جيد.
- 22) Why was Black Beauty worried when he saw thin horses in the market? لماذا كان بلاك بيوتي قلقاً عندما رأى الخيول النحيفة في السوق؟
 As he thought he might be thin like them one day. لأنه اعتقد أنه سيصبح نحيفاً مثلهم يوماً ما.
- 23) What did Black Beauty find difficult about his first few days in London? ما الشيء الذي وجده بلاك بيوتي صعباً عن الحياة في لندن؟
 ✓ There was so a lot of noise and and a lot of people and it was difficult for him to find his way between all the other carriages. لأن هناك الكثير من الضوضاء والعديد من الناس.. وكان من الصعب له إيجاد طريقه بين العربات الأخرى.
- 24) Why did Black Beauty think that Jerry was the best owner he had had? لماذا اعتقد بلاك بيوتي أن جيرى هو أفضل مالك له على الإطلاق؟ / لماذا أحب بلاك بيوتي جيرى؟
 ✓ Because he gave Black Beauty good food and fresh water, he was kind to him and he was a good driver. لأنه أعطى بلاك بيوتي طعاماً جيداً وماءاً عذبا، وكان عطوف معه، وكان سائقاً جيداً.

25) Do you think that Jerry was kind to his horses? Why ? هل تعتقد أن جيرري كان عطوفاً مع الخيول؟

✓ Yes, because he gave them good food, fresh water and a good rest. He pulled the reins lightly. نعم.. لأنه كان يعطيهم طعاماً جيداً، ماءً عذباً وراحة جيدة. وكان يشد اللجام بلطف.

26) How do we know that Jerry cared about his horses? كيف نعرف أن جيرري كان يهتم بخيوله؟

✓ Because he didn't take the passengers quickly to the station as he always thought of his horses and he didn't want his horses to be tired.

لم يأخذ الركاب سريعاً إلى المحطة. لأنه كان دائماً يفكر في خيوله ولا يريد أن يجعل خيوله متعبة.

27) Why did Black Beauty stop finding it difficult to pull a taxi in London?

لماذا توقف جيرري عن الشعور بوجود صعوبة في جر العربّة في لندن؟

✓ Because he began to trust Jerry. لأنه بدأ يثق في جيرري.

28) Why did Black Beauty feel sorry for some of the taxi drivers and their horses?

لماذا شعر بلاك بيوتي بالحزن على بعض سائقي عربات الأجرة وخيولهم؟

✓ Because they had to work for very long hours to get enough money.

لأنهم اضطروا للعمل ساعات طويلة للحصول على القدر الكافي من المال.

29) Why do you think that each of Ginger's owners paid less money for her?

لماذا تعتقد أن كل مالك كان يدفع مالاً أقل في جينجر؟

✓ Because she was becoming weaker and weaker, so she could not work very well.

لأنها كانت تضعف أكثر فأكثر، ولم تتمكن من العمل بشكل جيد جداً.

30) Do you think that people were always happy to have Jerry as a taxi driver? Why?

هل تعتقد أن الناس كانوا دائماً سعداء أن يقوم جيرري بتوصيلهم؟ لماذا؟

✓ He was probably not popular with everyone, because he did not always do what people asked him to do. غالباً لم يكن جيرري محبوباً من كل الأشخاص لأنه لم يكن يفعل دائماً ما يطلبونه منه.

31) Why do you think that Jerry took Captain to work on Black Beauty's first morning in London?

لماذا تعتقد أن جيرري أخذ "كابتن" للعمل في أول صباح لـ "بيوتي" في لندن؟

✓ I think he did not want Black Beauty to have a difficult first day.

لم يكن يريد بلاك بيوتي أن يجد صعوبة في أول يوم له.

32) Why did Ginger stop kicking people who weren't good to her?

لماذا توقفت جينجر عن رفض الناس الذين لم يكونوا جيدين معها؟

✓ Because she was not strong enough to kick any more.

لأنها لم تكن قوية بشكل كافي لكي ترفض مرة أخرى.

33) Do you think Black Beauty felt sorry for Ginger?

هل تعتقد أن بلاك بيوتي شعر بالحزن أو الأسف على جينجر؟

Yes, because she looked thin and very old.

نعم.. لأنها كانت تبدو نحيفة وعجوزة.

34) What do you think of the two men who jumped into the taxi before the poor woman?

ما رأيك في الرجلين الذين قفزوا في التاكسي قبل المرأة المسكينة؟

✓ I think they were impolite and unkind.

اعتقد أنهم كانوا غير مؤدبين وغير عطوفين.

35) How do we know that Jerry was a kind man?

كيف نعرف أن "جيرري" كان رجل طيب؟

How was Jerry kind to the poor woman?

كيف كان جيرري عطوفاً مع المرأة المسكينة؟

Do you think that the poor woman was pleased with Jerry Barker? Why?

هل تعتقد أن المرأة المسكينة كانت مسرورة من جيرري باركر؟ ولماذا؟

✓ He took the poor woman and her small son to hospital without money

أخذ المرأة المسكينة وابنها الصغير إلى المستشفى بدون مال.

36) Why were holidays not always an easy time for taxi drivers?

لماذا لم يكن وقت الأجازات دائماً سهلاً بالنسبة لساقي عربات الأجرة؟

✓ Because they had a lot of work taking people from house to house.

لأنه يكون لديهم الكثير من العمل يأخذوا الناس من منزل إلى منزل.

37) Why didn't Jerry go fast for the passengers who wanted to catch a train?

لماذا لم يذهب جيري سريعاً مع الركاب الذين أرادوا أن يلحقوا القطار؟

✓ As he always thought of his horses and didn't want his horse to be tired.

لأنه كان دائماً يفكر في خيوله .. ولا يريد حصانه أن يكون متعباً.

38) If you were Jerry, would you drive Black Beauty faster for money? Why?

لو كنت مكان جيري .. هل ستقود بلاك بيوتي بسرعة من أجل المال؟

✓ No, because we should be kind to animals.

لا.. لأننا يجب أن نكون عطفين على الحيوانات.

39) Why do you think the other taxi driver accepted going quickly with the two young men?

لماذا تعتقد قبول سائق عربة الأجرة الآخر الذهاب بسرعة مع الشابين؟

Because he cared about money more than his horses.

لأنه اهتم بالمال أكثر من حصانه.

40) How was life for a horse that pulled a taxi in London?

كيف كانت الحياة بالنسبة للخيول التي تجر عربات في لندن؟

✓ It was difficult because a horse had to work for long hours.

كانت صعبة لأنه كان يعمل لساعات طويلة.

41) Why do you think that Jerry became ill?

لماذا تعتقد أن جيري أصبح مريضاً؟

✓ He had to wait outside the house of a rich man for a long time and it was very cold.

لأنه اضطر أن ينتظر خارج منزل الرجل الغني لوقت طويل وكان الطقس بارد جداً.

42) Why do you think that Beauty was worried when Jerry found work with Mrs Fowler?

لماذا تعتقد أن بيوتي كان قلقاً عندما وجد "جيري" عملاً مع السيدة فاوولر؟

✓ Because he knew they would sell him and he was becoming old.

لأنه عرف أنهم سيقوموا ببيعه وأنه أصبح كبيراً في العمر.

43) In your opinion ,Why did Polly write to Mrs Fowler?

في رأيك .. لماذا كتبت "بولي" إلى "فاوولر"؟

✓ To find work for Jerry as he was very ill.

أن تجد عملاً لـ "جيري" لأنه أصبح مريضاً.

44) Who was Skinner and what do you think of him?

من كان سكينر وما هو رأيك فيه؟

✓ He was a taxi driver. He was a bad owner because he worked seven days a week and never gave his horses good food or good rest.

لأن سائق تاكسي. وكان مالك سيء لأنه كان يعمل سبعة أيام بالأسبوع ولم يعطي الخيول راحة أو طعاماً جيداً.

45) Why do you think Skinner made Beauty work hard?

لماذا كان سكينر يجعل بيوتي يعمل بجد؟

✓ Because he was very poor and had to work hard to get enough money to live.

لأنه كان فقيراً وكان يضطر للعمل بجد لكي يحصل على مال كافٍ ليعيش.

✓ Because he was greedy and wanted to get much money.

لأنه كان طماعاً ويريد الحصول على مال أكثر.

46) Do you think that Skinner was right to sell Black Beauty? Why / Why not?

هل تعتقد أن سكينر كان محقاً في أن يبيع بلاك بيوتي؟ لماذا؟

✓ No, because Skinner didn't give Black Beauty enough food to work well.

لا.. لأن سكينر لم يكن يعطي بلاك بيوتي طعاماً جيداً لكي يعمل جيداً.

47) Why do you think that Skinner told the girl not to worry after she said that Black Beauty looked too weak their bags?

✓ Because he didn't want to lose money even when his horse was weak or ill.

لأنه لم يريد أن يخسر المال حتى لو كان حصانه مريض أو ضعيف.

48) What do you think might have happened if Black Beauty continued to work for skinner a long time?
 ماذا تعتقد كان سيحدث لو استمر بلاك بيوتي في العمل لدى سكينر؟

✓ I think Black Beauty might have died.
 اعتقد أن بلاك بيوتي كان من الممكن أن يموت.

49) Do you think that Skinner and Filcher were kind to Beauty? Why / Why not?

هل تعتقد أن سكينر وفيلتشر كانوا عطفين مع بلاك بيوتي؟ لماذا؟

✓ No, both of them were unkind to Black Beauty. Filcher stole his food and gave it to his rabbits. Skinner made him work hard without giving him good food or good rest.

لا.. الاثنان كانوا غير عطفين مع بيوتي.. فيلتشر سرق طعامه وأعطاه للأرانب التي كان يربّيها.. وسكينر جعله يعمل بجد بدون إعطائه طعام جيد أو راحة.

50) Why do you think Black Beauty was sold at the part of the market where the horses were old or ill-looking?
 لماذا تعتقد أن بلاك بيوتي تم بيعه في السوق في الجزء المخصص للخيول الكبيرة والمريضة؟

✓ Because Black Beauty had been ill and now he looked old.

لأن بلاك بيوتي أصبح مريض وكبير في العمر.

51) How did Black Beauty feel when he was sold with old and ill-looking horses? Why?

كيف شعر بلاك بيوتي عندما تم بيعه مع الخيول الكبيرة في العمر والمريضة؟ ولماذا؟

✓ He felt sad. He thought that no one would want to buy him because he had been ill and then he looked old.

شعر بالحزن.. اعتقد أنه لا يوجد أحد يريد أن يشتريه لأنه كان مريضاً ويبدو عجوزاً.

52) Why do you think the people who looked at beauty at the market were very poor?

لماذا تعتقد أن الناس الذين كان يشاهدوا بلاك بيوتي في السوق كان فقراء جداً؟

✓ Because they wanted to buy a horse for as little money as possible.

لأنهم كانوا يريدوا أن يشتروا حصاناً بأقل قدر ممكن من المال.

53) Why didn't Black Beauty recognise Joe Green at first?

لماذا لم يتعرف "بيوتي" على "جو جرين" في البداية؟

✓ Because he was now a tall, strong man.

لأنه أصبح الآن رجلاً طويلاً وقوياً.

54) What did you learn from the story "Black Beauty"?

ماذا تعلمت من قصة "بلاك بيوتي"؟

✓ I learned to be kind to horses.

تعلمت أن نكون عطفين مع الخيول.

55) What is the moral of the story?

ما المغزى في هذه القصة؟

✓ Animals aren't machines and we should be kind to animals.

أن الحيوانات ليست آلات ويجب علينا أن نكون عطفين مع الحيوانات.

56) Do you think the story had a happy ending? Why?

هل تعتقد أن القصة كانت لها نهاية سعيدة؟

✓ Yes, as Black Beauty's work at Miss Bloomfield's home was easy and he felt strong again. His troubles were over.

نعم.. لأن عمل بلاك بيوتي في منزل السيدة بلومفيلد كان سهلاً وشعر بالقوة مرة أخرى. وانتهت جميع مشاكله.

57) In your opinion, how should people treat the animals that they work for them?

في رأيك. كيف يجب على الناس أن يتعاملوا مع الحيوانات التي تعمل لديهم؟

✓ In my opinion, people should treat the animals that work for them kindly.

في رأيي.. يجب على الناس أن يعاملوا الحيوانات التي تعمل لديهم بعطف.

السؤال الخامس (الاختياري)

Vocabulary

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d: (3 marks)

- 1) What is the of the number 10 bus?
a) destination جهة الوصول b) arrival c) meeting d) stop
- 2) Some students work in the holidays to some money.
a) spend b) lose c) give d) earn يكسب
- 3) Egypt can be hot in August.
a) special b) excellent c) especially خصوصاً d) specialized
- 4) We didn't have much money so we bought class tickets.
a) first b) express c) stopping d) economy اقتصادية
- 5) It is sad that some people become to computer games.
a) upset b) successful c) addicted مدمنين d) hard
- 6) My uncle is the of a factory. He gives instructions to the workers.
a) pack b) manager مدير c) mechanic d) secretary
- 7) The teacher wanted us to how the earth goes around the sun.
a) explain يوضح b) advise c) regret d) control
- 8) The canal is not natural. It is
a) made b) build c) man-made من صنع الإنسان d) building
- 9) The shop is for a new assistant. Perhaps Manal can work there.
a) investing b) writing c) advertising يعلن عن d) arranging
- 10) This email asks for my computer password. It must be a
a) score b) skin c) scam احتيال d) scan
- 11) My brother broke his phone and needs someone to it.
a) make b) explain c) repair يصلح d) report
- 12) It is hot today. It must be about forty
a) degrees درجات حرارة b) dots c) metres d) marks
- 13) Don't be! You have already eaten a big ice cream.
a) honest b) greedy طماع c) hardworking d) kind
- 14) The came from space and landed in the sea.
a) mountain b) minaret c) meteorite نيزك d) monument
- 15) The showed us how to dive under water.
a) hero b) interviewer c) instructor معلم/ مدرب d) inventor
- 16) How many eggs do the farmer's chickens each day?
a) lie b) give c) lay تبيض d) put
- 17) People have used to make cups for hundreds of years.
a) stone b) clay الطين الصلصال c) straw d) sticks
- 18) This book is I don't want to read it any more.
a) special b) excellent c) terrible فظيع d) greedy
- 19) I had an to fix my leg, and now I can walk again.
a) operation عملية جراحية b) accident c) event d) invitation

20) Maya works very hard. I'm sure she will the exams.

- a) provide b) succeed c) pass (بدون حرف جر) d) fail

21) Welcome to Cairo. Please the plane through the doors at the front.

- a) get into b) get on c) get off ينزل d) get out of

22) A checks that you have paid when you go on a bus or a train.

- a) waiter b) ticket inspector مفتش تذاكر c) manager d) baker

23) There is a big where the river goes over a cliff.

- a) fall b) water drop c) waterfall شلال d) water

Grammar

24) Ayten told me she early the next day on a trip.

- a) is leaving b) left c) was leaving (ترتيبيات) مستقبل d) will leave

25) Mona looks very happy. She done well in the exam.

- a) mustn't have b) must have استنتاج مؤكد c) would have d) should have

26) The teacher asked us talk.

- a) don't b) not c) not to (أمر) غير مباشر d) no

27) The train to Damietta at ten past eleven.

- a) leave b) leaves (مواعيد) مستقبل c) leaving d) will

28) You seen Omar at school yesterday. You sat next to him!

- a) might have b) shouldn't have c) must have استنتاج مؤكد d) might not have

29) I encouraged my younger brother hard.

- a) to work (أمر) غير مباشر b) work c) works d) working

30) Ola asked me all the people in my family were tall.

- a) that b) what c) if (سؤال) غير مباشر d) weather

31) I've cleaned the kitchen, but the bedrooms cleaned yet.

- a) has not been b) haven't been مضارع تام (مجهول) c) have been d) wasn't

32) If we went to the beach , we swimming.

- a) will go b) have gone c) could go (if) حالة ٢ d) won't go

33) Ahmed asked me what doing yesterday at four o'clock.

- a) was I b) I was (فاعل + فعل) غير مباشر c) am I d) I am

34) Some beautiful flowers planted outside the school.

- a) has been b) was c) have been مضارع تام (مجهول) d) have

35) If you visited the zoo on Friday, it very busy.

- a) is b) might have c) would have d) might be (حالة ٢)

36) If Osama had got the job at the bank , he travelled a lot.

- a) will have b) would c) had d) would have (حالة ٣)

37) If we saw Ali , we ask him to phone you.

- a) would (حالة ٢) b) would have c) will d) do

38) The river was very dry because it for two months.

- a) doesn't rain b) rained c) had not rained ماضي تام d) has not rained

39) If Leila had more free time , she read more books in English.

- a) would (حالة ٢) b) would have c) will d) must

40) If I that he was famous, I would have taken a photograph of him.

- a) knew b) know c) had known (حالة ٣) d) was knowing

41) What before you played tennis?

- a) you eat b) you ate c) you had eaten d) had you eaten ماضي تام

42) I'm hungry. I think I a sandwich.

- a) am buying b) am going to buy c) will buy قرار سريع d) buy

تمارين إضافية

43) The train stops at Luxor its way to Aswan.

- a) with b) on في طريقه إلى c) in d) over

44) Yesterday, we the bus at school to go our house.

- a) got into b) got off ينزل من c) got on d) got out of

45) The assistant told us that our was at the front of the train.

- a) cart b) carriage عربة القطار c) bus d) plane

46) You have bought many things! how much money did you.....?

- a) book b) take c) spend ينفق d) give

47) At night in the desert, you can sometimes seestars, but they disappear quickly!

- a) shooting نيزك b) shopping c) shouting d) showing

48) Moons usually go around.....

- a) planets الكواكب b) stars c) the sun d) the solar system

49) Four touristsa car and took some photos of the statues in the park.

- a) got into b) got out of ينزل من السيارة c) got on d) got off

50) Welcome to Cairo. Pleasethe plane through the doors at the front.

- a) got into b) got off ينزل من c) got on d) got out of

51) Mayar's cousin is going to live in Cairo so she has bought a/an ticket.

- a) single تذكرة ذهاب فقط b) only c) express d) return

52) Osama is coughing all the time. I think he has a problem with his.....

- a) lungs الرئتين b) legs c) arms d) hearts

53) Too much smoking can cause lung and heart.....

- a) degrees b) diseases أمراض c) beats d) reasons

54) Maysa works very hard so I'm sure she'll the exams.

- a) provide b) pass ينجح (بدون حرف جر) c) succeed d) fail

55) Volleyball is very game, you need to be fit to play it.

- a) psychological b) mental c) physical بدني d) nervous

56) The..... which helps you breathe is the lung.

- a) member b) organ عضو في الجسم c) part d) group

57) Sameha heart operation and became better.

- a) took b) had أجرى جراحة (كمريض) c) did d) made

58) His lungs were.....because of smoking LM.

- a) better b) damaged أتلفت c) returned d) cured

59) My brother went to a good university and had a great.....

- a) entertainment b) population c) education تعليم d) invitation

60) 16.workers often have to wear boots and a helmet.

- a) office b) special c) manual يدوي d) hand

61) Students in.....education do not go to technical schools

- a) real b) general التعليم العام c) different d) technique

- 62) We are proud being Egyptians.
a) to b) about c) of فخور بـ d) with
- 63) My father worked..... a big project in the new capital.
a) of b) on يعمل في مشروع c) in d) out
- 64) The manager asked me to tell him about my work.....
a) exercise b) experiment c) Experience خبرة d) exam
- 65) Some stars are made of.....
a) oil b) gas الغازات c) plastic d) metal
- 66) I..... if you could tell me how many solar systems there are.
a) want b) tell c) explain d) wonder يتساءل
- 67) If you want to look at stars and planets in our solar system you can go to the
a) laboratory b) observatory المرصد الفلكي c) theatre d) university
- 68) The teacher wanted us to how the earth goes around the sun.
a) explain يشرح b) advise c) regret d) control
- 69) Could you explain to me why I can't feel the earth.....
a) burn b) turn دوران c) travel d) get
- 70) can look at the planets through a telescope.
a) astronauts b) astrologers c) astronomers علماء الفلك d) astronomy
- 71) You can usually find trees and birds at an..... in the desert.
a) art gallery b) adventure c) oasis واحة d) object
- 72) is a very hard white, black or pink rock used for building.
a) wood b) metal c) paper d) Marble الرخام
- 73) Social media are websites used by people to.....
a) change b) communicate يتواصل c) arrange d) Allow
- 74) We can use mobile phone tomoney to or from a bank.
a) develop b) arrange c) transfer يحوّل d) travel
- 75) Some messages on the internet are not real. They are from people who want to get information from you.
a) creams b) scans c) scams احتيال d) scores
- 76) The privacyon social networking sites make sure that only people who you know can see information.
a) messages b) settings اعدادات الخصوصية c) sizes d) sites
- 77) A/an.....went into the house at night and stole a lot of gold.
a) reporter b) sailor c) Robber السارق d) engineer
- 78) There is a/an..... in the newspaper for a new computer game.
a) advertisement إعلان b) experiment c) development d) payment
- 79) The students have..... to see the teacher after the class.
a) arranged يرتب b) paid c) advertised d) traveled
- 80) It was summer and ant wasfood for the winter.
a) eating b) collecting يجمع c) coming d) Sleeping
- 81) Khadeeja was very upset after she lost her..... necklace.
a) woolen b) golden ذهبي c) plastic d) wooden
- 82) Marwan asked to Mustafa's phone so he could call his mother..
a) lend b) give c) borrow يستعير d) See

- 83) A story with a moral has a.....
a) message b) sad ending c) happy ending نهاية سعيدة d) no ending
- 84) It is a good idea to ask a wise person for
a) food b) wonders c) money d) advice نصيحة
- 85) Dinosaurs are animals which have died
a) out ينقرض b) off c) of d) on
- 86) Yassin stopped and rested in a when he was climbing the mountain.
a) flat b) cave كهف c) hotel d) school
- 87) What was the.....of the accident outside the museum?
a) cause سبب b) reason c) course d) degree
- 88) The fishermen keep their equipment in small wooden on the beach.
a) hats b) nuts c) huts أكواخ d) cuts
- 89) is important because it gives us food to eat.
a) farming الزراعة b) growing c) drinking d) reading
- 90) People have used to make cups for hundreds of years.
a) stone b) clay الطين الفخار c) straw d) sticks
- 91) Theof the book was boring, but the end was very exciting.
a) last b) beginning البداية c) closing d) building
- 92) Dinosaurs are found as.....on earth now.
a) shells b) fossils حفريات c) eggs d) coins
- 93) 53.is something which comes from volcanoes.
a) wind b) cloud c) dust غبار d) rain
- 94) Theshowed us how to dive under water.
a) hero b) interviewer c) instructor مدرب d) inventor
- 95) Have you been as interesting as Alexandria?
a) somewhere b) everywhere c) anywhere أي مكان (سؤال) d) nowhere
- 96) A..... is a big, flat fish that lives at the bottom of the sea
a) stingray السمكة اللادغة b) whale c) coral d) dolphin
- 97)are the fastest fish in the world.
a) dolphins b) starfish c) sailfish السمكة الشراعية d) whales
- 98)is a group of animals that live together in large groups.
a) moral b) coal c) coral المرجان d) coffee
- 99) The said that he saw some beautiful coral under the sea.
a) diver الغواص b) driver c) player d) runner
- 100) The best place to see fish is in the old of a boat near the island.
a) bone b) work c) wreck حطام d) stone
- 101) It was a..... to hear that nobody was hurt in the accident.
a) belief b) relief راحة/ ارتياح c) shock d) sadness
- 102) There was a lot of..... when the tourists saw some dolphins following the boat.
a) development b) arrangement c) excitement إثارة d) advertisement
- 103) Don't go diving when the sea is.....
a) cool b) rough هائج c) calm d) calm

السؤال السادس (Rewrite)

6) Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets:

1- My plan is to spend the summer in Alexandria. I'm going to spend the summer in Alexandria.	(أشكال المستقبل - تخطيط)	(going)
2- I've arranged to meet the manager tomorrow. I'm meeting the manager tomorrow.	(أشكال المستقبل- ترتيبات)	(meeting)
3- I tried the fish at the restaurant, but I regret it. I shouldn't have tried the fish at the restaurant.	(ندم في الماضي)	(shouldn't)
4- Sami was cold last night. He wore a coat. Sami must have been cold last night. He wore a coat.	(استنتاج مؤكد)	(must)
5- Amr's arm hurts. Perhaps he broke it. Amr might have broken his arm.	(استنتاج محتمل)	(might)
6- It is not possible that you saw Mona yesterday. She is in Paris. You can't have seen Mona yesterday. She is in Paris.	(استنتاج مستحيل)	(can't)
7- I'm not sure where Tarek is. Perhaps he's in the park. I'm not sure where Tarek is. He might be in the park.	(استنتاج محتمل)	(might)
8- Perhaps if we see the teacher, she can help us with our homework. If we see the teacher, she might be able to help us with our homework.		(might)
9- English is our favourite subject," my friends said to me. My friends told me that English was their favourite subject.	(غير مباشر - خبرية)	(told)
10- "Stand up , please," the teacher said to Ali. The teacher ordered Ali to stand up.	(غير مباشر - جملة أمرية)	(ordered)
11- "You must stop smoking!" the doctor said to Hatem. The doctor advised Hatem to stop smoking.	(غير مباشر - أمرية)	(advised)
12- "Look out, Ali! A car is coming," Nabil said. Nabil warned Ali to look out because a car was coming.	(غير مباشر - أمرية)	(warned)
13- "What is the fastest way to Capital Bank?" I asked what the fastest way to Capital Bank was.	(غير مباشر - استفهامية)	(I asked)
14- I'm not rich . I don't live in a big house. If I were rich, I would live in a big house.	(الجملة مضارع) (حالة ٢)	(If)
15- I didn't recognise your cousin so I didn't say hello. If I had recognised your cousin, I would have said hello.	(الجملة ماضي) (حالة ٣)	(If)
16- I was ill, so I didn't go to work. If I hadn't been ill, I would have gone to work.	(الجملة ماضي) (حالة ٣)	(If)
17- She didn't get high marks because she didn't study hard. If she had studied hard, she would have got high marks.	(حالة ٣)	(If)

18- They have painted the building again. The building has been painted again by them.	(مضارع تام – مجهول)	(been)
19- I went to school, then I played tennis. After I had gone to school, I played tennis.	(روابط الماضي التام)	(After)
20- I liked the book a lot, so I decided to read it again. I liked the book a lot, so I decided to reread it.	يعيد قراءة	(reread)
21- I can't wait to go to the museum tomorrow. I am looking forward to going to the museum tomorrow.	يتطلع إلى	(look forward)
22- What's the name of the biggest city in England? I'd like to know the name of the biggest city in England. I'd like to know what the name of the biggest city in England is.		(like to know)
23- Do you have as much water as you need? Do you have enough water?		(enough)

تمارين إضافية

24- I've already arranged to visit the museum tomorrow. I'm visiting the museum tomorrow.	(مستقبل – ترتيبات)	(visiting)
25- Hend planned to spend the weekend in Alexandria. Hend will spend the weekend in Alexandria.	(مستقبل – تخطيط)	(will)
26- My father promised to buy a tablet for my sister. My father will buy a tablet for my sister.	(مستقبل – وعود)	(will)
27- What do you intend to study next year? What are you going to study next year?	(مستقبل – نية)	(Are)
28- I am sure that he travelled by bus. He must have travelled by bus.	(استنتاج مؤكد)	(must)
29- I ate fish at the restaurant, but I regret it. I shouldn't have eaten fish at the restaurant.	(توصيات في الماضي)	(shouldn't)
30- I didn't read all the questions before answering the exam. I should have read all the questions before answering the exam.		(should)
31- Noha didn't do her homework. Noha should have done her homework.	(توصيات في الماضي)	(should)
32- I bought an old car but I regret. I shouldn't have bought an old car.	(توصيات في الماضي)	(shouldn't)
33- I must have left my notebook at home. I am sure I left my notebook at home.	(استنتاج مؤكد)	(sure)
34- the doctor said to Hazem, "You must stop smoking" the doctor advised Hazem to stop smoking.	(غير مباشر – جملة أمرية)	(advised)
35- "Don't touch the snake," Mona said to Ola. Mona warned Ola not to touch the snake.	(غير مباشر – جملة أمرية)	(warned)

36- " My sister wants to buy a book," said Ahmed. Ahmed said that his sister wanted to buy a book. (غير مباشر – جملة خبرية)	(said)
37- "Would you like to read the book?" Randa said to Reem Randa invited Reem to read the book. (غير مباشر – جملة أمرية)	(invited)
38- "I am learning how to swim " 'said Tarek. Tarek said that he was learning how to swim. (غير مباشر – جملة خبرية)	(Tarek said)
39- "Why do you come late, Hossam? " the teacher said. The teacher asked Hossam why he came late. (غير مباشر – جملة استفهامية)	(asked)
40- "How long does it take you to get to school?" Warda said to me Warda asked me how long it took me to get to school. (غير مباشر – استفهامية)	(asked)
41- " Will you take me to the new capital, dad?" Areej asked dad if he would take her to the new capital. (غير مباشر – استفهامية)	(Areej asked)
42- They have collected a lot of money for the charity. (مضارع تام – مجهول) A lot of money has been collected for the charity by them.	(been)
43- Salwa hasn't done the homework yet. (مضارع تام – مجهول) The homework hasn't been done by Salwa yet.	(been)
44- The police have closed the road to the airport. (مضارع تام – مجهول) The road the airport has been closed by the police.	(been)
45- I can't go on holiday because I don't have enough time. If I had enough time, I could go on holiday. (حالة ٢)	(If)
46- I advise you not to tell lies. If I were you, I wouldn't tell lies. (حالة ٢ - نصيحة)	(If)
47- I'm very short. so, I can't play basketball. If I weren't very short, I could play basketball. (حالة ٢)	(If)
48- If you learnt Japanese, you would perhaps get a job in Tokyo. If you learned Japanese, you might get a job in Tokyo.	(might)
49- Heba doesn't play tennis well, so she doesn't get a medal. If Heba played tennis well, she would get a medal. (حالة ٢)	(If)
50- If you didn't get help, you would be in trouble. Unless you go help, you would be in trouble. (unless = if not)	(Unless)
51- First, I finished my work, then I went to the club. I didn't go to the club until I had finished my work. (ماضي تام)	(until)
52- First, I studied my lessons, then I did my homework. After I had studied my lessons, I did my homework. (ماضي تام)	(After)
53- We visited the museum, then we went home. After we had visited the museum, we went home. (ماضي تام)	(After)
54- They played indoor games as the weather was very bad. If the weather hadn't been very bad, they wouldn't have played indoor games.	(If)
55- I was ill, so I didn't go to work. If I hadn't been ill, I would have gone to work. (حالة ٣)	(If)

السؤال السابع (البراجراف)

لكتابة الموضوع يجب أن يكون به: (جملة مقدمة – الموضوع – جملة خاتمة)

- ١) ليس ضرورياً استخدام المقدمات الجاهزة.. ولكن تكون المقدمة عن الفكرة العامة للموضوع.
- ٢) نترك مسافة قبل كتابة الجملة الأولى في السطر الأول فقط من الموضوع.
- ٣) نراعي علامات الترقيم جيداً... مثل: استخدام الحرف الأول capital في بداية كل جملة، وضع نقطة (.) في نهاية كل جملة.
- ٤) نبدأ الجملة بالفاعل ثم الفعل.. ونستخدم الزمن المناسب للموضوع.
- ٥) نستخدم جملات بسيطة ولا داعي للتعقيد.. ومراعاة القواعد بشكل صحيح.
- ٦) نهتم بالتنظيم وحسن الخط.. وترك مسافة بين الكلمة والأخرى.
- ٧) نختم بجملة خاتمة تلخيصاً للموضوع.. مثل:

(To conclude, الموضوع is very important for me and many people)

أو (Finally, الموضوع is very useful and we should)

٨) في النهاية نتأكد من أن عدد الكلمات مناسب للعدد المطلوب.

جملة مقدمة

First of all, I am very happy to write about this topic because it is very important and interesting, too.

أولاً قبل كل شيء، إنني سعيد جداً بالكتابة عن هذا الموضوع لأنه مهم جداً وشيق أيضاً.

جملة ختامية

In the end, it has become clear that this subject is so important that it needs more and more paragraphs to discuss it in details. I wish I had covered its points and made it clear.

في الختام، أصبح من الواضح أن هذا الموضوع مهم جداً ويحتاج لكتابة فقرات أكثر وأكثر لمناقشته بالتفصيل. أتمنى أن أكون قمت بتغطية نقاطه وجعله واضحاً.

1) A train journey you had رحلة بالقطار قمت بها

Last week, we went to Aswan. We went there by train. It was a good journey. Travelling by train is a great way to see the scenery of a country. My father booked us tickets in the sleeper train at Cairo station. There were a lot of other people who were waiting too, so the train was going to be busy.

We went in first class because it is more comfortable than the second class. It had comfortable beds. It's exciting to sleep in a place and wake up in another place. We had our dinner in the restaurant carriage this evening. The journey took about 13 hours to arrive at our destination. We had a good time.

2) One of the ancient wonders of the world إحدى عجائب العالم القديمة

I visited the Great pyramid last week. I went on a school trip with my friends. It was an amazing day. The great pyramid is one of the most important wonders of the world. It's 137 metres high. It contains amazing rooms. The ancient Egyptians built pyramids as tombs for the pharaohs and their queens. The pyramids were built thousand years ago. It took twenty years to be built. It has many secrets in the way of building and designing it. It contains many monuments. These monuments were taken to the Egyptian museum. Now The great pyramid of Giza stays on the new list of wonders as a special eighth wonder.

3) Social networking sites مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي

Some people become addicted to using social networking. At first, they use them just to send messages to their friends and to find out what their friends are doing. However, some people need to check their social networking sites all the time. If they don't check them, they begin to worry or feel unhappy. The best way to help these people is to suggest that they only use social networking sites for about half an hour. Suggest that they phone their friends instead of sending them messages. Encourage them to play a sport or make something instead of looking at their mobile phones.

4) A job I would like to do وظيفة تود أن تعمل بها

It is known that any person should have a certain goal in life. If the person has a goal, he should exert great efforts to achieve this goal. My goal for the future is to become a doctor. I would like to do this job to serve my country, help poor people in my village and earn a lot of money. I hope to search for the causes of diseases like cancer or brain disease to find the best treatment for them.

The job of the doctor has some qualities. A successful doctor should be honest, helpful, brave, patient, faithful and many other good qualities. If I want to become a doctor, I should study hard to join the faculty of medicine.

5) A story with a moral قصة ذات مغزى

One day , a farmer found that his goose had laid a yellow egg. When he picked it up, it was heavy . he decided to take it home. He found out that it was a golden egg. Every morning, the same thing happened. The farmer soon became very rich. He sold all the golden eggs in the market. However, the farmer soon became greedy. He thought that there must be a lot of golden eggs inside the goose, so He decided to kill the goose to take all the golden eggs inside it. .He didn't find anything. We learn that we shouldn't be greedy.

6) Something you are addicted to شيء أنت مدمن له

I'm samy and I have a big problem. I was a successful student. I always worked hard and I was very good at English and maths. However, I slowly changed and I stopped studying. I don't know for sure what changed me. I smoked all the time. I might have become addicted to smoking. I should have talked to my parents, my

friends or his teacher. They might have helped me with my problems. However, I coughed all the time and I became very ill. The doctors told me that I had lung disease from too much smoking. I spent a lot of time in hospital and I didn't spend enough time studying. So I did not pass any of my exams that year. I regretted starting smoking. However, my life is better now. I have stopped smoking and have started to study again. I am sure I will pass his exams this year.

7) The importance of technical schools أهمية مدارس التعليم الفني

Technical schools are very important. There are now more technical schools around Egypt .. About 60 % of students in Egypt go to technical secondary where they learn a different kind of technical skill. For example, students can learn about work in hotels and shops or learn skills needed for industry, farming or nursing. students study at these schools for three or five years. students who do very well at technical schools can continue to study at university. they can get very good jobs, such as becoming engineers. however, all jobs that need skill are important. life would be impossible without electricians , nurses , mechanics and farmers.

Email

To: Ali

From: Ahmed

Subject: Dangers of smoking

Dear Ali,

I'm very happy to write this email to you. I would like to talk about smoking. Smoking is very bad for your health. The tobacco in cigarettes contains dangerous chemicals. It makes you ill. Smoking damages your lungs and you cannot breathe well. People who smoke can't run or breathe well. Also, they can't do many jobs. smoking can make people's fingers and teeth yellow, too. People who start smoking find it very difficult to stop, because their bodies need the tobacco . Cigarettes are very expensive, too. Smoking pollutes the environment. We should all help keep the environment clean because we all live in it. So people should do some sports. We should help them give up smoking .

Best wishes

**Yours,
Ahmed**

أولا: المحادثة

عبارة عن محادثته عليها أربع درجات والفكرة الاساسية للسؤال ده هو انك تقدر تفهم المحادثة بتدور على أيه و ده هتعرفه من عنوان المحادثة

A man is buying a ticket at a train station.

Man : Good morning. 1-Can I book a ticket to Luxor, please?

Assistant: To Luxor? Of course. 2 Would you like a single or a return ?

Man : A return, please. I'm coming back on Tuesday.

Assistant: That's LE100. The next train leaves in 30 minutes.

Man : 3 Could you tell me which platform the train leaves from.?

Assistant: The train leaves from platform 2.

Man : 4 Platform 2? Thank you very much

Nevine and Lamia are at the ticket office of a museum.

Assistant : Unfortunately, the museum is closed today.

Lamia : Oh no. 1 What a pity.! I didn't know that.

Assistant : Didn't you look at the website? It has all the times there.

Lamia : I'll look next time When can we visit the museum?

Assistant: You can come any other day, but I don't recommend Saturday.

Lamia : 3 Why shouldn't we visit on Saturday?

Assista : Because it is difficult to see things since there are so many people!

Lamia : 4 Perhaps we can come tomorrow?

Assistant: Tomorrow is perfect.

Some students are asking a scientist about space.

Noha : Do you think you could tell me how fast the earth turns ?

Scientist : Yes, of course. The earth turns at about 1,670 kilometres an hour.

Ola : I wonder if you could tell me if all planets have moons

Scientist: No, but most of them do have moons.

Noha : What did you ask the scientist, Ola? 3 I asked the scientist if all planets had moons.

Maya : There are many things that nobody knows about space. Do you agree?

Scientist: I couldn't agree with you more. However, we are trying to learn more!





A basketball player is visiting a school.

Teacher : Today, a famous basketball player is visiting our school. This is Captain Tarek. 1 Could you answer some of the students' questions?

Tarek : Of course. What questions would the students like to ask?

Ali : My friends say that I will never be good at basketball because I'm not very tall. Is that right?

Tarek : 2 I'm afraid I disagree . You don't have to be tall. When I started playing , I was one of the smallest boys in the class!

Basel : 3 What happened after that?

Tarek : I became the best player in the class because I always trained hard.

Basel : Do you think one day I might be as good as you?

Tarek : 4. You might be!

Amal and Lamia are talking about a man's journey along the Nile.

Amal : In the news, it says that a man has walked all the way along the Nile.

Lamia : Yes, I heard about this. It's unusual! 1 Why did he do it ?

Amal : He did it because he wanted to see if it was possible.

Lam: I heard that at the beginning of the journey, he was ill, but 2-he got better

Amal: That's good. 3 Is he going to write about his journey himself ?

Lamia : Yes, he said he would. It will be a very interesting journal to read.

Amal : 4 I couldn't agree with you more.

Fawzy and Mazin are speaking about a dangerous hobby

Fawzy: Look at this photograph in the magazine: A man is standing on top of a very tall building.

Mazin: Really? 1 Why is he doing that ?

Fawzy: The magazine says it's his hobby.

Mazin: 2 He shouldn't do that/be there. It's dangerous.

Fawzy: I couldn't agree with you more. The police should stop him.

Mazin: 3 What else does it say ?

Fawzy: It also says that the police arrested him.

Mazin: 4 Oh dear





- السؤال الثاني في ورقة الامتحان و (4 درجات) ..

- الفكرة الاساسيه فالسؤال ده هو انك تفهم الموقف كويس جدا . و تكون عارف اذا كنت انت اللي بتسأل ولا انت اللي هتجواب .

▪ You ask : انت اللي بتسأل . المطلوب هنا تكوين سؤال .

▪ You are asked : انت اللي بتسأل . يعني مطلوب منك اجابه .

السؤال الثاني

Buying / Booking a train ticket حجز تذكرة قطار	
1- Can I book a (single / return) ticket to (اسم مدينة) , please?	1 لطلب حجز تذكرة
2- Would you like first or second class?	2 للاستفسار عن درجة القطار المفضلة
3- How long does (نوع القطار) take ?	3 لمعرفة المدة التي يستغرقها القطار
4- How much is (نوع التذكرة) , please?	4 للسؤال عن سعر التذكرة
5- Could you tell me which platform (نوع القطار) leaves from ?	5 لمعرفة الرصيف الذي سيتحرك منه القطار
Expressing past recommendations التعبير عن التوصيات في الماضي	
6- I think you should have + P.P.....	6 اعتقد انه كان ينبغي
7- You shouldn't have + P.P	7 كان ينبغي عليك الا
Explaining a choice in the past إيضاح اختيار شيء في الماضي	
8-I really didn't want to + inf ... It's not + (adj)	8 حقاً لا اريد (....) انها ليست ...
9- I wasn't interested, thanks	9 لست مهتماً ، شكرا
Expressing regret in the past التعبير عن الندم في الماضي	
10- I really shouldn't have + P.P..... because	10 حقاً كان لا ينبغي علي لان ...
Making opinion stronger ابداء الرأي بقوة	
11- extremely – Cairo is extremely crowded	11 للغاية
12- very - The exam was very easy	12 جداً
13- Really - This movie is really interesting	13 حقاً
14- quite - I don't mind pizza. I'm quite interested in it.	14 الى حد ما
Asking polite questions السؤال بطريقة مهذبة	
15- Could you please explain to me why	15 هل من الممكن ان توضح لي لماذا
16-I wonder if you could tell me	16 اتسأل لو بالامكان ان تخبرني ...
17- I'd like to know if	17 اريد ان اعرف اذا ...
18- Do you think we could	18 هل تعتقد اننا يمكننا ... ؟
Asking for opinions طلب الرأي	
19- What do you think of ...?	19 ما رأيك في ... ؟
20- How do you feel about ...?	20 ماذا تشعر اتجاه ... ؟
21- Do you agree? + (جمله رأيك) .	21 (جمله الرأي) هل تتفق ؟
Expressing agreement التعبير عن الموافقة في الرأي	
22-That's (exactly) how I feel.	22 هذا بالفعل ما اشعر به
23-You have a point there.	23 اتفق معك
24- I agree with you.	24 متفق معاك
25- I couldn't agree with you more.	25 مقدرش اوافق اكثر من كذا
Expressing disagreement	
26- I'm afraid I (totally) disagree	26 معترض معك كلياً
27- I feel (completely) the opposite.	27 اشعر بالعكس تماماً





Giving opinion			
28-In my opinion – In my opinion French is so bad	من رأيي		28
29- I think that - I think that , learning English is very useful	في اعتقادي		29
Encouraging people to continue speaking			
30- Great! What else does it say?	عظيم ! و ماذا ايضاً		30
31-Really? Go on.	حقاً ؟ أستمر		31
32- How wonderful! Tell me more.	يا له من شئ رائع ! أخبرني المزيد		32
33- Then what happened?	ثم ماذا حدث ؟		33
Responding to news الاستجابة للأخبار			
34-How wonderful !	(خبر سار)	يا له من شئ رائع	34
35-I'm very happy to hear that !	(خبر سار)	انا سعيد جداً سماع ذلك	35
36-Oh no! I'm sorry to hear that!	(خبر سي)	يااه ! انا حزين لسماع ذلك	36
37-How terrible !	(خبر سي)	يا له من شئ فظيع	37
Gives dates you are not sure of اعطاء تواريخ غير متأكد منها			
38- رقم / تاريخ + lived about + الحدث / اسم الشئ			38
39- In around + جملة + الحدث / اسم الشئ , سنة			39
40- I'm going to talk about + (That-who) lived almost + رقم / تاريخ + الحدث / اسم الشئ			40
41- we think that + رقم / تاريخ + First lived maybe + الحدث / اسم الشئ			41

2- Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

- 1- You have just finished the hardest test that you have ever done. Your mother asks you how the test was. It was extremely difficult.
- 2- You are taking a bus from Cairo to Alexandria. You want to know how long you will spend on the bus. How long does the bus take?
- 3- You wanted to go to the beach today, but your parents say that it is too windy. I wish that it was not windy./What a pity that it is windy.
- 4- You visited England in the winter. It was the coldest place that you have been. A friend asks you what the weather was like. It was extremely cold.
- 5- You want to book a ticket for the train from Cairo to Luxor. You are coming back on Thursday. Can I book a return ticket to Luxor, please?
- 6- You see a news report about poor people who live in Asia. You would like to be able to help them. I wish that I could help these people.
- 7- You would like to ask a teacher to explain why it is colder in the winter than in the summer. Could you please explain to me why it is colder in the winter.?
- 8- You think that this lesson is very interesting. You want to know what your friend thinks of it. What do you think of this lesson?





- 9- A friend tells you that he / she had an interesting morning. First, he / she went to the park. You want to know more. Tell me more./Go on.
- 10 -You would like to ask a teacher when he / she started working at the school. I wonder if you could tell me when you started working at the school.
- 11- A friend says that he / she thinks that the last lesson was the most interesting that you have had. I couldn't agree with you more. / I'm afraid I disagree.
- 12-A friend starts to read you an interesting news story, but then suddenly stops Go on./What else does it say?
- 13- Your parents say that they are taking you to the beach tomorrow. Great!/I can't wait!/I'm looking forward to that.
- 14- You see people leaving rubbish on a beach. How terrible!
- 15- A friend tells you that you have won a prize. How wonderful!
- 16- Your friend asks you when your father was born. You aren't sure, but you give an answer. Maybe in 1977./About 40 years ago.
- 17-You hear that a tourist was lost in the desert, but that he has just been found What a relief! / Phew!
- 18- You hear that scientists have found a new medicine which will help many people. How wonderful!

ثالثا: قطعة الفهم

عليها ٤ درجات ومضمونه بس علشان تحلها صح لازم تقرأها بتركيز علشان تعرف هي عايزة آيه وتبدأ تطلع الاجابات منها

Hi Ragab,

I am very sorry that I didn't come to your house yesterday. I'll tell you why. I left home to catch the bus at four o'clock. The bus broke down and did not arrive, so waited for the next one, which was at half past four. The bus arrived, but before I got on the bus, an old man came out of a shop. He was carrying some heavy bags. The bus driver told me to help him with his bags. He thought that the man wanted to get on the bus. I offered to help him, but he asked me to carry the bags to his car. I carried his bags and put them in his car boot. I did not catch the bus at half past four. I was too late to go to your house so I didn't wait for the five o'clock bus. I was not happy when I got home, but my father told me that I was kind to help the old man.

Best wishes, Taha





Answer the following questions :

1- Why didn't Taha catch the bus at four o'clock?

2- Why do you think that the bus driver did not wait for Taha?

Because Taha spent a long time helping the old man with his bags.

3- Why was Taha not happy when he went home?

Because it was too late to go to Ragab's house

4- What does the underlined word **one** refer to?

(Ragab's house - Taha's house - the next bus - the bus at five o'clock)

5 -What do you think the word **boot** means?

(space for bags in a car - a kind of boat - a kind of car - a place to keep cars)

Read the following, then answer the questions:

In the last few years, I have travelled on some of the world's longest train journeys. First, I went on the longest train journey in the world. Taking nearly a week, it goes from Moscow to the east of Russia. My mother thought that I would be bored, but I loved it. Then a friend advised me to take the train from Shanghai to Lhasa in China. **It** takes about two days. People warned me that the train goes incredibly high into the mountains and it can be difficult to breathe, but I had no problems. Finally, I travelled in Australia from Perth to Sydney. Taking the world's straightest railway for four days was **unforgettable**. I travelled on my own. However, I have encouraged some of my friends to come with me next time.

Answer the following questions :

1- How long is the world's longest train journey?

It takes nearly a week.

2 Why do you think that his mother thought he would be bored?

Because it is a very long journey

3 What does the underlined word **it** refer to?

4 What do you think the word unforgettable means?

(easy to remember - easy to forget - boring - not nice)

5 This passage is about.....

(train journeys - the trouble with travelling – the journey in Australia)





Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mars has been studied for hundreds of years. Astronomers say that it is the planet which is most like the earth. A day on Mars is nearly the same as it is on earth. **It** lasts for 24 hours and 39 minutes. However, a year lasts for one year and 320 days, so a year on Mars is almost twice as long as a year on earth. If you looked at Mars through a telescope, you might see a very big mountain. It is more than 20 kilometres high. That is three times as big as Everest! Scientists say that if you went to Mars, you might find water under the surface. However, living on Mars would not be easy. In summer, the temperature is usually minus 5°C and in winter it can be minus 82°C!

Answer the following questions :

1- What is the main idea of this passage?

It gives information about the planet Mars.

2- What do scientists think might be on the planet Mars that people could use?

They think that there might be water.

3- Can you think of three reasons why it would not be possible to live on Mars?

It is very cold in winter and very hot in summer. There might not be any water. There is probably no air to breathe.

4- What does the underlined word it refer to?

(Mars - a day on Mars - a year on earth - a year on Mars)

5- What do you think that the word surface means?

(the sea - the clouds - the top of the ground - the biggest rivers)

Read the following, then answer the questions:

A tourist has been found after spending five days in the desert. He went for a walk and must have got lost. He was delighted when a farmer found him. The farmer gave him water and told him that he should have taken a phone and lots of water into the desert. Then the farmer took him to a hospital. When he got **there**, a doctor advised him to sleep and drink lots of water, but said that he was not hurt. We interviewed the tourist when he got home. He asked us to thank the farmer and the doctors. He said that if he went to the desert again, he would be much more careful.





Answer the following questions :

- 1- What happened to the tourist when he went for a walk?
- 2- Why do you think the farmer said that he should have taken a phone?
- To call someone if he had problems
- 3- What did the doctor say that the tourist should do?
- 4- What do you think the word **delighted** means?
(very sad - very thirsty - very happy - very ill)
- 5- What does the underlined word **there** refer to?
(the desert - the farm - the hospital - the man's home)

Read the following, then answer the questions:

If you go to some places in Asia, you might see some amazing snakes which can do this. The answer is that it is easier for the fly! Scientists have asked why they snakes to travel this way because they live in an area full of tall trees. If they didn't fly, they would have to go down one tree and then climb up the next one. It is much quicker for them to jump from one tree and fly to the next. The snakes easier and second. How do they do this? Scientists can fly about 24 metres at ten metres a very now know that the snakes put their bodies in the shape of an S and move slowly. If the scientists hadn't used digital cameras to film them in slow motion, we **this** might never have known

Answer the following questions :

- 1- What is unusual about some of the snakes in Asia? They can fly.
- 2- Why don't the snakes climb down one tree and climb up the next?
- 3- Why do you think that the scientists studied the snakes?
because the scientists wanted to find out how they could fly.
- 4- The expression in slow motion means watching something .
(more slowly than usual - faster than usual
- very carefully - in a laboratory)
- 5 What does the underlined word this refer to?
(why snakes fly - where snakes live
- what snakes eat - how snakes fly)





Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hi Osama,

You told me to ask my father what problems he had had in his life. He said that when he was 20, he had an accident in the desert when he had driven all night. When he was 24, someone took all his money when he travelled to London. If he hadn't travelled to Brazil when he was 30, he wouldn't have been bitten by a snake and spent a day in hospital! So I asked him if he wished he hadn't done **these things**. "No, I don't regret anything!" he said. "Remember that it is not what you do that you regret, but what you don't do." I will remember that advice. Tell me what your father says!

Best wishes, Karim

Answer the following questions :

1- Where did Karim's father have an accident?

2- Did many good or many bad things happen to his father?

Many bad things happened to him.

3- Do you agree with his father's advice? Why? / Why not?

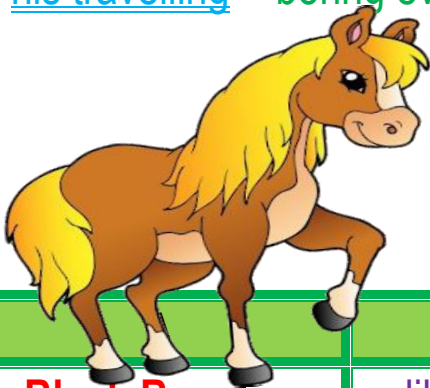
Yes, because it is best to try doing things even if they are not successful

4 -What do you think the word bitten means?

(cut into by teeth - followed - frightened - hit)

5- What do the underlined words these things refer to?

(his travelling - boring events - different places - hospitals)



رابعاً: القصة

	B
b-Black Beauty	a. liked the latest fashion
c. Ginger	b. was the horse Lady Anne liked to ride
e. York	c. said If they don't tighten reins, I will do what they ask me
a. Lady Smythe	d. was much smaller than Earl Smythe's
	e. was Earl Smythe's helper





e. Black Beauty	a. was accused of stealing the horses' food
d. Mr Barry	b. suggested buying good food for Beauty
b. Mr Barry's friend	c. Said, "if they can't pull a carriage, we must sell them.
a. Filcher	d. was a rich man who bought Black Beauty
	e. was taken to a market for horses

b. Jerry Barker	a. always helped to look after Black Beauty and worked hard
c. Captain	b. was the best owner and a kind taxi driver
a. Harry	c. examined Black Beauty carefully.
e. Black B	d. the horse that went out with the carriage in the morning
	e. was pleased with his new owner.

c. Polly	a. believed that a pound wouldn't help if it made the horse tired
d. Ginger	b. was given food before walking for many kilometres
a. Jerry	c. was Jerry's wife.
b. Black B	d. wasn't able to run very fast after the fall
	e. was Jerry's son.

e. The doctors	a. had easier work in the end.
d. Skinner	b. took Black Beauty to a large field to give him food.
b. Mr Thoroughgood	c. had no problems all his life
a. Black Beauty	d. was also a taxi driver
	e. told Jerry that he should stop driving a taxi.

e. Jerry & his family	a. stopped working as the vet said he broke his leg.
d. Black Beauty	b. decided to sell Black Beauty.
c. Joe Green	c. recognized Beauty from his white foot and white star
b. Skinner	d. become healthy again after Mr Thoroughgood and his grandson looked after him.
	e. moved to a cottage to work for Mrs Fowler

Answer the following questions :

1- In what ways was Earlshall Park better than Birtwick Park?

It was bigger and more modern

2- Why did Lady Smythe use special reins to keep the horses' heads held high?

Because it was the latest fashion





3- Why was it very difficult for the horses to pull the carriage up a hill?

As they could`nt put their heads down when they were wearing the reins

4- Do you think that Ginger was right to start to kick? Why / Why not?

Yes, because she was very uncomfortable.

No. She should have worked hard like Black Beauty.

5 How do we know that York cared about Ginger and Black Beauty? He was angry that they wore the special reins. He helped them when they were hurt.

6- What was the problem with the reins that Lady Smythe wanted the horses to wear? they were very uncomfortable and it was difficult to pull a carriage up a hill with them on.

7-How did Ginger and Black Beauty become hurt?

They fell to the ground and had to be cut from the carriage.

8 -Do you think that Black Beauty was angry with Ginger because he was hurt? Why? / Why not? No because he realised that Ginger only did this because the reins were uncomfortable.

9- What did Filcher do with Black Beauty's food?

He took it home to give to his rabbits.

10- Why do you think that Earl Smythe said that he might not get much money for Ginger? Because Ginger's knees were badly damaged. She also does not always do what her owners want

11 -Why do you think that Jerry became ill?

He had to wait outside the house of a rich man and it was very cold.

12- Why do you think that Black Beauty was worried when Jerry found work with Mrs Fowler? Because he was becoming old and he knew that he might have more difficult work to do in the future.

13- Who was Skinner and why was he a bad owner?

He was a taxi driver . He was a bad owner because he never gave his horses a good rest or enough to eat.

14 -What happened when Black Beauty tried to pull the carriage up a hill?

He fell onto the ground and thought that he was going to die.

15- Why didn't Black Beauty recognise Joe Green at first?

Because he became a tall, strong man.

16- How did Jerry describe Black Beauty to his daughter?

He said that he was as gentle as she was.





17- Why did Black Beauty stop finding it difficult to pull a taxi in London?

Because he began to trust Jerry.

18-Why do you think that Jerry took Captain to work on B.Beauty's first morning in London? I think he did not want Black Beauty to have a difficult first day.

19- Why did Ginger stop kicking people who weren't good to her?

Because she was not strong enough to kick any more.

20- How do we know that Jerry was a kind man? We know that Jerry is kind because he took the woman to hospital when he saw that she needed help

21 -Why were holidays not always an easy time for taxi drivers?

Because they had a lot of work taking people from house to house.

22-What happened to Jerry when he had to wait outside the house of a rich man?

He became ill because it was very cold.

23- Why did Polly write to Mrs Fowler?

Jerry could not drive taxis any more, so Polly wanted to find work for him.

24- Why do you think that Skinner told the girl not to worry?

I think because he didn't want to lose money to get enough money

25- Why do you think that Black Beauty was sold at the part of the market where the horses were old or ill-looking?

Because Black Beauty had been ill and now he looked old.

26 What did Black Beauty find difficult about his first few days in London?

There was a lot of noise and a lot of people and it was difficult for him to find his way between the carriages.

27- Why did Black Beauty think that Jerry was the best owner he had had?

Because he gave Black Beauty good food and fresh water, he was kind to him and he was a good driver.

28 Why did Black Beauty feel sorry for some of the taxi drivers and their horses?

Because they had to work for very long hours to get enough money.

29 Why do you think that each of Ginger's owners paid less money for her?

Because she was becoming weaker , so she could not work very well.

30 Do you think that people were always happy to have Jerry as a taxi driver?

Why? He was probably not popular with everyone, because he did not always do what people asked him to do.





السؤال الخامس

السؤال الخامس هيكون الاختيارى عبارة عن ٦ نقاط عليهم ٣ درجات ٣ جرامر و ٣ كلمات

CHOOSE THE CORRECT ANSWER FROM A, B, C OR D:

- 1- Ayten told me she..... early the next day on a trip. (left - was leaving - will leave)
- 2- Mona looks very happy. She done well in the exam.
(mustn't have - must have - would have - should have)
- 3- The teacher asked us talk. (don't - not - not to - no)
- 4- What is the of the number 10 bus? (arrival - destination - meeting)
- 5- Some students work in the holidays to..... some money. (spend - lose - earn)
- 6- Egypt can be..... hot in August. (special - excellent - especially - specialized)
- 7- If Leila had more free time, she read more books in English.
(would - would have - will - must)
- 8- If I that he was famous, I would have taken a photograph of him.
(knew - know - had known - was knowing)
- 9- What before you played tennis? (you ate - you had eaten - had you eaten)
- 10- How many eggs do the farmer's chickens..... each day? (lie - lay - put)
- 11- People have used to make cups for hundreds of years. (stone-clay -straw)
- 12- This book is..... I don't want to read it any more. (special - terrible -greedy)
- 13- Ola asked meall the people in my family were tall. (that - what - if)
- 14- I've cleaned the kitchen, but the bedroomscleaned yet.
(haven't been - has not been - have been - wasn't)
- 15- If we went to the beach, we..... swimming. (will go - could go - won't go)
- 16- The teacher wanted us to..... how the earth goes around the sun.
(explain - advise - regret - control)
- 17- The canal is not natural. It is.....(made - man-made - building)
- 18- The shop isfor a new assistant. Perhaps Manal can work there.
a investing b writing c arranging d advertising
- 19- Ahmed asked me whatdoing yesterday at four o'clock.
(was I - I was - am I - I am)
- 20- Some beautiful flowers..... planted outside the school.
(has been - was - have been - have)
- 21- If you visited the zoo on Friday, it..... very busy.





(is - might have - would have - might be)

- 22- This email asks for my computer password. It must be a(skin-scam- scan)
 23- My brother broke his phone and needs someone to..... it.(make-repair- report)
 24- It is hot today. It must be about forty.....(degrees - metres – marks)
 25- If Osama had got the job at the bank, he.....travelled a lot.

(will have – would - had - would have)

- 26- If we see Ali, we ask him to phone you. (would - would have - will)
 27- The river was very dry because it for two months.

(doesn't rain - rained - had not rained - has not rained)

- 28- Don't be! You have already eaten a big ice cream.(honest -greedy– kind)
 29 -The came from space and landed in the sea. (minaret – meteorite)
 30- The showed us how to dive under water. (hero - instructor – inventor)
 31- The train to Damietta at ten past eleven. (leave- leaves - leaving)
 32- You..... seen Omar at school yesterday. You sat next to him!

(might have - shouldn't have - might not have - must have)

- 33- I encouraged my younger brother..... hard. (to work - work - working)
 34- We didn't have much money so we boughtclass tickets.

(first - express - stopping - economy)

- 35 - It is sad that some people become..... to computer games.

(upset - successful - addicted - hard)

- 36 My uncle is the of a factory. He gives instructions to the workers

(captain - manager - mechanic - secretary)

السؤال السادس

Rewrite

Rewrite the following sentences

- 1 "Stand up, please," the teacher said to Ali.

(ordered)

☞ The teacher ordered Ali to stand up.

- 2- Sami was cold last night. He wore a coat.

(must)

☞ sami must have been cold last night. He wore a coat.

- 3- Amr's arm hurts. Perhaps he broke it.

(might)

☞ Amr might have broken his arm





4- It is not possible that you saw Mona yesterday. She is in Paris. (can't)

☞ You can't have seen Mona yesterday. She is in Paris

5- "Look out, Ahmed! A car is coming," Nabil said. (warned)

☞ Nabil warned Ahmed that a car was coming.

6- I tried the fish at the restaurant, but I regret it. (shouldn't)

☞ I shouldn't have tried the fish at the restaurant.

7- If I see Sayed, perhaps I'll ask him to help me with my homework. (might)

☞ If I see Sayed, I might ask him to help me with my homework.

8 - I can't wait to go to the museum tomorrow. (look forward)

☞ I am looking forward to going to the museum tomorrow.

9 - I was ill, so I didn't go to work. (If)

☞ If I hadn't been ill/If I had been well, I would have gone to work.

10-Perhaps if we see the teacher, she can help us with our homework. (might)

☞ If I see the teacher, she might be able to help us with our homework.

11- What's the name of the biggest city in England? (like to know)

☞ I'd like to know the name of the biggest city in England.

12- They didn't like the colour of the house, so they decided to paint it again with a different colour. (repaint)

13- I'm not sure where Tarek is. Perhaps he's in the park. (might)

☞ I'm not sure where Tarek is. He might be in the park.

14- Do you have as much water as you need? (enough)

☞ Do you have enough water?

15- I didn't recognise your cousin so I didn't say hello. (if)

☞ If I had recognised your cousin, I would have said hello.

16- "You must stop smoking!" the doctor said to Hatem. (advised)

☞ The doctor advised Hatem to stop smoking.

17- "What is the fastest way to Capital Bank?" (I asked)

☞ I asked what the fastest way was to Capital Bank

18- I liked the book a lot, so I decided to read it again. (reread)

☞ I liked the book a lot, so I decided to reread it



القواعد العامة لكتابة موضوع التعبير:

موضوع التعبير يعتبر من أصعب الاسئلة بالنسبة لطالب المرحلة الاعدادية وعلشان كده الجزء ده فى غاية الاهمية لانه سيعطيك الخبرة اللازمة للتعامل مع هذا السؤال استعدادا للمرحلة الثانوية لذلك عليك أن تتبع التالي جيدا :

- ١- أن تترك مسافة كلمة في السطر الأول
- ٢- أن تبدأ كل جملة بحرف Capital كبير وواضح.
- ٣- أن تضع (.) في نهاية كل جملة .
- ٥- أن تراعي الترابط والتنسيق العام بين أفكار الموضوع .
- ٦- أن تستخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب لنوعية الموضوع الذي تكتبه
- ٧- استخدم الجمل البسيطة والسهلة في المعني.
- ٨- اجتهد في تحسين خطك وأترك مسافة بين كل كلمة فهذا يعطي انطباعا طيبا للمصحح
- ٩- أنت مش ملزم بكتابه مقدمه لأنك لسه ف إعدادي بس عايزك تتدرب علشان حضرتك كمان ٣ شهور وتكون ثانوي هيطلب منك تكتب ٧ جمل فى موضوع من اثنين
- ١٠- هناك بعض الروابط التي تكتب مع بداية كل فكرة جديدة وتستخدم لربط الموضوع مثل :-

<i>On one hand</i>	من ناحية	<i>One the other hand</i>	من ناحية أخرى
<i>In addition to that</i>	بالإضافة إلى ذلك	<i>Moreover</i>	علاوة على ذلك
<i>Above all</i>	وفوق كل ذلك	<i>Thus</i>	وبناء على ذلك
<i>Over and above</i>	مضافا إلى ذلك	<i>Consequently</i>	نتيجة لذلك

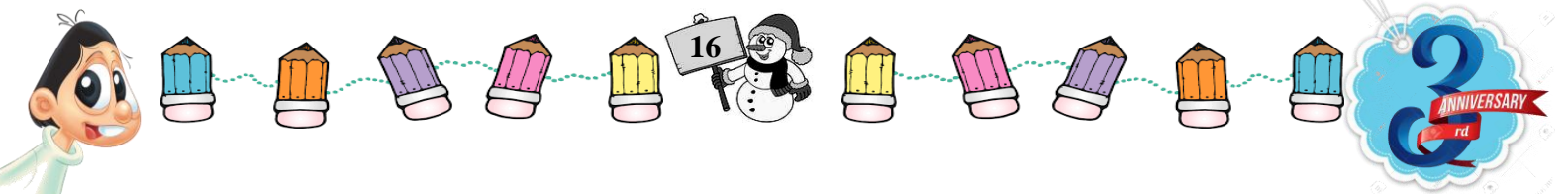
شوية الجمل دى لتعزيز البرجراف وطبعاً مش لازم لازم يعنى تكتب الحاجات دى

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 👍 It is worth mentioning that..... | من الجدير بالذكر أن |
| 👍 For the sake of our country | لصالح بلادنا |
| 👍 To create good citizens | لخلق مواطنين صالحين |
| 👍 Thanks to your efforts | بفضل جهودكم |
| 👍 To achieve prosperity and welfare | لتحقيق الرخاء والرفاهية |
| 👍 We have to stand firmly against | علينا أن نقف بحزم ضد |
| 👍 It can't be denied that.... | لا يستطيع أحد ان ينكر ان |
| 👍 It is taken for granted that... | من المسلم به ان |
| 👍 There is no doubt that..... | مما لا شك فيه ان |

مقدمه للموضوع الايجابي

We all agree thatis very necessary and plays an important part in our life as it is the backbone of any nation

كلنا نتفق ان ضروري ويلعب دورا هاما في حياتنا فهو العمود الفقري لأى أمة





مقدمه للموضوع السلبي

I see that..... stands for an obstacle in the way of our progress .Hence,our state spares no effort to put an end to it

أرى أنتقف عقبة فى طريق تقدمنا ومن ثم فإن دولتنا لا تدخر جهدا فى أن تضع حدا لها
طيب لو سيادتكم مش عاجز توجع دماغك وعاجز مقدمة وخاتمة تتفع لأى موضوع
..بردوا جبنتك الحل أهو 🙌🏻

Fancy holding my pen to write about this important topic . I am sure that everyone will tackle it from a different angle, but I will focus on the main points.

إننى أشعر بالفخر حينما أمسك بقلمى وأكتب فى هذا الموضوع الهام وإننى على يقين تام بأن كل شخص
سيتناوله من زاوية مختلفة ولكننى سأقوم بالتركيز على بعض النقاط الهامة
ودى كـمان الخاتمة

Finally, I'd like to point out that what I have just written about this interesting topic is just like adding a drop of water to the ocean !

وفى النهاية أود ان أشير الى ان كل ما ذكرته هو بمثابة قطرة ماء فى المحيط

1. Some useful advice a teacher or friend has given you

I 'm going to talk about a good advice. My teacher advised me to know and practice many skills. He thought it might help me later. I paid attention to his advice and tried to master English and computer. Really his advice was very good for me after graduation.I worked in a big company quickly. I respected this teacher so much.

2. The importance of vocational schools.

Vocational (Technical) schools are very important for the future of any country. Students in these schools are different from others. They learn how to use technology and study it in the same time. They study different fields. Students who do well at technical schools can continue to study at university. All technical jobs are very important in our life.

3. Social networking sites. :-

Egypt is the first Arab country to use the internet. Using social networking sites has become popular nowadays. It has some advantages and disadvantages. These sites can help you make more friends easily. It helps you see many different people. You can learn new things. Also, some people use it badly. We must be careful when we use social networking sites.

4. How your school has changed over the past few years.

My school is very old. It was built fifty years ago. Some changes have happened to my school. Two buildings have been added to the school. Our school was consisted of three floors only. Now, it's consisted of five floors. In the past , there were twenty classrooms. Now , there are thirty classrooms.

5. Someone you have interviewed





A great scientist visited our school yesterday. I asked him why the sky is blue. He said that it was because we see blue light from the sun. Also , I asked him what clouds were made of. He said that they were made of tiny pieces of ice and water. Also , he told me that we can grow more vegetables in the desert in the future. He was a clever scientist.

6. One of the ancient or modern wonders of the world

The Great Pyramid is the most fantastic one. It's in Giza. It took 20 years to build. It's 137 metres high. It has many secrets in the way of buildings and designing. It controls many monuments. These monuments were taken to the Egyptian Museum.

8. A story with a moral

One day, a farmer found that his goose had laid a yellow egg. When he picked it up , it was heavy. He found out that it was golden egg. Every morning , the same thing happened .The farmer became very rich. He sold all the golden eggs in the market. He decided to kill the goose to get all the golden eggs inside it. He didn't find anything and lost everything .We shouldn't be greedy.



TO : adam@gmail.com

From : mohamedgaber201538@gmail.com

About : إسم الموضوع

Dear : Adam

I am happy to write you. How are you and your family?-----

----- . I am looking forward to hearing from you

See you soon.

Yours,

إسم الراسل





You were planning to meet your friends an hour ago, but they haven't arrived. What do you think might, must or should have happened?			how your school has changed over the past few years		
To	:	Hossam	To	:	Mona
From	:	Tarek	From	:	Rana
Subject	:	Meeting friends	Subject	:	My school
<p>It pleases me to write this e-mail. How are you? Last week , I waited two of my friends to visit me at home. I waited them at the station for three hours. They didn't come. I think that their train didn't come on time as its their first time to he late. After that, I knew that there was an accident.</p> <p>All the best, Tarek</p>			<p>Hi Mona,</p> <p>My school is very old. It was built 18 years ago. Some changes have happened to my school. Two buildings have been added to my school. Our school was consisted of three floors . Now, it's consisted of five floors. In the past , there were twenty classrooms. Now there are thirty classrooms.</p> <p>All the best Rana</p>		
a situation when someone tried to persuade you to do something but you refused			a visit to the Red Sea		
To	:	Hany	To	:	Hany
From	:	Hossam	From	:	Hossam
Subject	:	A situation	Subject	:	a visit to the Red Sea
<p>Hi Hany,</p> <p>Last week my friend tried to persuade me to visit Alexandria in winter. I didn't agree with him. Alexandria is cold in winter. I prefer visiting Luxor. It's warm. He prefers Alexandria as there are many places to visit. I promised him to visit Alexandria in summer.</p> <p>All the best, Hossam</p>			<p>Hi Hany</p> <p>The red sea is one of the warmest seas in the world. There are hundreds of fish and sea animals that live there. There are many kinds of fish like stringrays and sailfish. There are many kinds of sharks in the Red sea. You can also enjoy watching the beautiful green turtles. What surprises me is that you can see dangerous coral in the Red sea. There are many lovely beaches along the Red Sea.</p> <p>All the best , Hossam</p>		
social networking sites			an animal that you like		
To	:	Nada	To	:	Ahmed
From	:	Ahmed	From	:	Mohamed
Subject	:	social networking sites	Subject	:	an animal that you like
<p>Hi Nada</p> <p>It pleases me to write thus email. How are you? I want to tell you about the importance of social networking sites. Egypt ,for example, has nearly 50 million users for these sites. It's very important to make new friends. Also, they help in exchanging ideas between different groups of people. It allows us to send messages to a lot of people at the same time.</p> <p>All the best, Ahmed</p>			<p>Hi Ahmed</p> <p>The camel is the animal that I like most. It's called the ship of the desert. It's very patient. It can store too much water in its body for a long time, so it can walk for many days without drinking. The camel walks at 40 kilometres per hour. It's a very useful animal. People in deserts can't do without it.</p> <p>All the best, Mohamed</p>		



1- Finish the following dialogue: (4 Marks)

Some students are asking a scientist about space.

الحوار

السؤال الاول

- Noha** : (1) ?
Scientist : Yes , of course. The earth turns at about 1,670 kilometres an hour.
Ola : (2)
Scientist : No, but most of them do have moons.
Noha : What did you ask the scientist, Ola?
Ola : (3)
Maya : There are many things that nobody knows about space. Do you agree?
Scientist : (4) However, we are trying to learn more!

Answers

- ① Do you think you could tell me how fast the earth turns ?
 ② I wonder if you could tell me if all planets have moons.
 ③ I asked the scientist if all planets have moons.
 ④ I couldn't agree with you more

A basketball player is visiting a school.

- Teacher** : Today, a famous basketball player is visiting our school. This is Captain Tarek. (1)..... ?
Captain Tarek : Of course. What questions would the students like to ask?
Ali : My friends say that I will never be good at basketball because I'm not very tall. Is that right?
Captain Tarek : (2) You don't have to be tall. When I started playing, I was one of the smallest boys in the class!
Basel : (3) ?
Captain Tarek : I became the best basketball player in the class because I always trained very hard.
Basel : Do you think one day I might be as good as you?
Captain Tarek : (4)

Answers

- ① Could you answer some of the students questions ?
 ② I'm afraid. I disagree.
 ③ What happened after that ?
 ④ You might be.

Fawzy and Mazin are speaking about a dangerous hobby.

- Fawzy** : Look at this photograph in the magazine. A man is standing on top of a very tall building.
Mazin : Really? (1) ?
Fawzy : The magazine says it's his hobby.
Mazin : (2)
Fawzy : I couldn't agree with you more. The police should stop him.
Mazin : (3) ?
Fawzy : It also says that the police arrested him.
Mazin : (4)

Answers

- ① What is he doing there ?
 ② He shouldn't do that./ be there. It's dangerous.
 ③ What else does it say ?
 ④ Oh dear.

1- Finish the following dialogue: (4 Marks)

A passenger is buying a train ticket

Assistant : Can I help you,sir?

passenger : Yes, I'd like to book aticket to Cairo.

Assistant : (1)..... ?

passenger : A return ,please. (2).....?

Assistant : That`s LE 300.

passenger : When is the next train?

Assistant : (3).....

passenger : At 7 o'clock? does it leave from platform 3?

Atef and Adel are talking about STEM schools

Atef : Have you ever heard about a STEM school ,Adel?

Adel : (1)..... .

Atef : (2) ?

Adel : It represents scence, technology , engineering and maths.

Atef : (3) ?

Adel : Teachers help the student through the projects they do.

Atef : Do you think there will be more STEM schools in Egypt in the future?_

Adel : (4)..... .Thanks a lot , Atef.

Atef : You are most welcome Adel

Would you like a single or a return ?

How much is that, please_?

It is at 7 o'clock

Yes, it does

1-Yes, I have

2- What does STEM represent ?

3- How do teachers help the students?

4- Yes, I do

A passenger is booking a ticket to Alexandria

Passenger : Can I book a ticket to Alexandria, please?

Assistant : Certainly. Would you like a single or return?

passenger: I'd like a single, please. (1) ?

Assistant : There`s an express train in half an hour.

Passenger : (2) ?

Assistant : It`s LE 50 in economy class.

Passenger : How long does it take?

Assistant:(3)

Passenger : Could you tell me which platform the train leaves from?

Assistant: (4)

1/What time is the next train

2- How much is that, please

3-It arrives after an hour 4

4- It leaves from platform 5

Sameh and Salma are talking about the summer holiday

Sameh : What are you going to do next summer holiday, salma

Salma : I am going to join a public library.

Sameh : Good (1)?_

Do you have one in your town?

Salma : Yes, we have one in our town.

.....(2).....?

Where are you going to spend the summer holiday?

Sameh : I haven't decided yet, but I may go to Alexandria.

Salma : What will you do there?

Sameh : (3)

I will go to the beach and swim in the sea

Salma : I wish you the best of luck

Sameh : (4)

Thank you, Salma

Ahmed and Basma are talking about life in the countryside

Ahmed : Some people think life in the country is getting worse and worse. What do you think?

Basma : (1)

I feel completely the opposite

Ahmed : But can you find all your needs there?

Basma : (2)

No, I can't

Ahmed : (3)?

Do you think most people there are friendly?

Basma: Sure. Most people there are friendly.

Ahmed : (3)?

What do you think of the city?

Basma : The city is always noisy and there is much pollution.

Hassan asks his friend Ali about his last visit to Aswan

Ali : Hi, Hassan! How are you doing?

Hassan : Hi! Great. (1).....?

Ali : I've been to Aswan with my family.

Hassan : (2).....?

Ali : We took the sleeper train.

Hassan : Why do you usually go in the first class?

Ali : (1).....

Hassan : How do you book tickets?

Ali : It sounds easy.

Hassan : Eventually, How do you like it?

Ali : Wonderful. We all enjoyed it a lot.

- Where have you been?

How did you go there ?

Because it is more comfortable .

I book tickets online



مستر / محمد عبد التواب السطوحى
٠١٠٦٧٤٣٤٨٩٥



A teacher is talking to a student who is late for school

Student : Excuse me, may I come in?

Teacher : Yes, stand here. (1) ?

Student : I always come late because of the bus.

Teacher : (2)?...

Student : I always leave home at quarter to eight.

Teacher : (3)

Student : Ok. From tomorrow, I'll leave home a bit earlier.

Can I sit now, sir?

Teacher : (4)

Why do you come late?

When do you leave home?

You should leave home a bit earlier

Yes, of course. / Yes, you can

Maha meets Dina who has bought a new dress

Maha : What a nice dress you are wearing?

Dina : Thanks a lot.

Maha : (1) ?

Dina : Two weeks ago.

Maha : How much did you pay for it?

Dina : (2)

Maha : Oh! Two thousand pounds is too much, isn't it?

Dina : ...(3)..... . But you know prices are mad nowadays.

Maha : I'd like to buy one(4) ?

Dina : Of course. I'll come with you

When did you buy it ?

paid two thousand pounds.

for it

Yes, it is.

Will/Can you come with me

A man is buying a ticket at a train station

Man : Good morning. Can I book a ticket to Aswan, please?

Assistant : Sure.(1)?

Man : Return, please. What time is the next train?

Assistant : (2) _..... .

Man : I should hurry then. (3) _..... ?

Assistant : It's LE 100.

Man : Which platform does the train leave from?

Assistant : (4) _..... . It will leave in thirty minutes.

1-Would you like a single or a return ? 2- The next train is at 7 o'clock

3- How much is it, please ?

4- Platform 3

A passenger is at Cairo Railway Station to book a ticket to Alexandria

Passenger : Hello, sir. I'd like to book a ticket to Alex, please.

Assistant : Hello. (1)

... Would you like a single or a return

Passenger : A single, please.

Passenger : (1)

How much is it, please?

Assistant : It is fifty pounds.

Passenger : When does the train leave?

Assistant : (1)

... The train leaves after 10 minutes.

Passenger : How long does it take to reach to Alexandria?

Assistant : (1)

... It takes two hours to reach Alexandria

Passenger : Thank you.

Assistant : You're welcome

Huda went to the ticket office at the station to book a ticket

The assistant : Can I help you?

Huda : (1)

The assistant : A single or a return ticket?

Huda : (2) because I have to come back tomorrow.

The assistant : (3) ?

Huda : First class, please because it is more comfortable. (4) ?

The assistant : It costs LE 100.

1- I want to book a ticket to Cairo, please

2- A return ticket, please

3-First or second class ?

4- How much is it, please ?

A man is buying a ticket at a train station

Assistant : Can I help you?

Man : Yes, please. (1)

Assistant : To Cairo? Sure (2)

?

Man : A single please. I don't know when I'll come back.

Assistant : That's LE 115.

Man : (3)

Assistant : The next train leaves in 30 minutes

Man : (4)

Assistant : You're welcome

I'd like to book a ticket to Cairo.

... Would you like a single or a return

When does the next train leave .?

... Thank you

A tourist wants to buy a train ticket to Luxor

Tourist : Good morning. I'd like to buy a ticket to Luxor, please.

Assistant : Would you like to buy a single or return?

Tourist : A single, please.(1) ?

Assistant : It's 60 Egyptian pounds.

Tourist : How long does the train take?

Assistant : (2)

Tourist : (3)?

Assistant : Platform 2. Have a good trip.

Assistant : Platform 2. Have a good trip.

Tourist : (4)

How much is it, please ?

It takes 12 hours to get to Luxor

Which platform does the train leave from?

... Thank you

Mona asks Sahar about what she is going to do in the evening

Mona : Good afternoon ,Sahar.

Sahar : Good afternoon ,Mona.

Mona : (1)?

Sahar : I'm going to the airport this evening.

Mona : (2) ?

Sahar : To meet my father. He's coming from Kuwait.

Mona : (3)?

Sahar : His plane will arrive at 10 P.M

Mona : I hope he arrives safely.

Sahar : (4)

Where are you going this

Why are you going there ?

What time will his plane arrive ?

. Thank you, Mona

A tourist wants to go to the pyramids

Ayman : Hello. How can I help you?

Tourist : (1)

Ayman : Go along Al Haram street. the pyramids at its end.

Tourist : But I don't know this street very well.

Ayman : (2)

Tourist : That's a great idea.(3)?

Ayman : I think you should pay 50pounds for the taxi drivers.

Tourist : This is very cheap. Thanks a lot.

Ayman : (4)

1- Could you please tell me how I get to the Pyramids ?

2- So, you should take a taxi ...

How much should I pay for the taxi driver ?

4- You are welcome

Ahmed is phoning to book a ticket to London**Ahmed :** Hello! Is this Egypt air office?**Assistant :** Yes, sir. (1)?..**Ahmed :** I want to book a ticket to London, please.**Assistant :** (2)?..**Ahmed :** A return ticket , please.**Assistant :** (3)?**Ahmed :** How much does it cost?**Assistant :** (4)?**Ahmed :** Thank you. I'll send you my visa number.

What do you want ?Would you like a single or a return ?... OK...- It costs 1000 pounds**Hany and Ali are talking about reading****Hany :** Hello, Ali ! What are you doing?**Ali :** Hello, Hany! I'm (1)**Hany :** I know you enjoy reading English books.**Ali :** (2)?**Hany :** I bought it yesterday.**Ali :** Can I (3)?**Hany :** Yes, of course**Ali :** Thank you very much.**Hany :** (4)

reading an English bookWhen did you buy it ?borrow it ?. You are welcome**Ahmed is buying a ticket at a train station****Ahmed :** Excuse me, can you help me, please?**Assistant :** (1).....**Ahmed :** I'd like a ticket to Aswan , please.**Assistant :** Would you like a single or a return?**Ahmed :** (2)I'd like to know what time the next train is**Assistant :** There is an express train leaves at 8 o'clock to Aswan.**Ahmed :** (1)?How much does it cost ?**Assistant :** It costs LE 300.**Ahmed :** (1) How long does it take to get to Aswan. ?**من لم يصبر على ذل العلم ساعة صبر على ذل الجهل العمر كله**

A man is buying a ticket at a train station

passenger : Good morning. I'd like a return ticket to Cairo, please. (1)

Assistant : The next train is at 9:30.

passenger : How much is that ,please?

Assistant : (2)..... _

passenger : (3).....?

Assistant : It takes about two hours.

passenger : Could you tell me which platform the train leaves from?

Assistant : (4).....?

1- When is the next train. 2- It's 100 pounds
3- How long does it take to get to Cairo? 4- Platform 6

Ahmed lost his bag

Policeman : Can I help you?

Ahmed : Yes, please.(1)

Policeman : (2)?

Ahmed : Thirty minutes ago.

Policeman : (3)?

Ahmed : At the bus stop.

Policeman : What was inside the bag?

Ahmed : (4)

Policeman : Ok, Sir. I'll need your name and address to contact you if it is found

I lost my bag

What time did you lose it_?

Where did you lose it_?

There was a lot of money inside it

Ayman is at the doctor's

The doctor : What's wrong with you, Mr. Ayman ?

Ayman : I can't breathe well and I cough all the time .

The doctor : (1)

Are you a heavy smoker_ ?

Ayman : Yes, I'm a heavy smoker .

The doctor : Unfortunately, smoking has made you a lung disease .

Ayman : (2)?

What should I do?

The doctor : You should stop smoking right now .

Ayman : So if I stopped smoking, would I be better ?

The doctor : (3)

Certainly. / Sure

Ayman : What else do you advise me to do ?

The doctor : (4)?

You should play a sport_ ?

Ayman : Ok, I will start from tomorrow. Sport will make me stronger .

A man is buying a ticket at a train station.

- Man** : Good morning. (1) ?
Assistant : To Luxor ? Of course. (2) ?
Man : A return, please. I'm coming back on Tuesday.
Assistant : That's LE100. The next train leaves in 30 minutes.
Man : (3) ?
Assistant : The train leaves from platform 2.
Man : (4)

Answers

- ① Can I book a ticket to Luxor , please? ③ Could you tell me which platform the train leaves from?
 ② Would you like a single or a return ticket? ④ Platform 2 ? Thank you very much.

Nevine and Lamia are at the ticket office of a museum.

- Assistant** : Unfortunately, the museum is closed today.
Nevine : Oh no. (1) ! I didn't know that.
Assistant : Didn't you look at the website? It has all the times there.
Lamia : (2) I'll look next time. ?
Assistant : You can come any other day, but I don't recommend Saturday.
Lamia : (3) ?
Assistant : Because it is difficult to see things since there are so many people.
Lamia : (4)
Assistant : Tomorrow is perfect.

Answers

- ① What a pity ! ③ Why shouldn't we visit on Saturday ?
 ② When can we visit the museum ? ④ Perhaps we can come tomorrow.

الى ابنائى وبناتى

هذه ثمرة جهدى لكم ارجو من الله عز وجل ان تنفعكم

يوجد فى هذه المذكرة حوالى ٢٦ حوار تشمل كل اجزاء المنهج

مع خالص تحياتى

مستر /محمد عبدالنواب السطوحى

الفيوم /مطرطارس /مدرسة فاطمة الزهراء

2- Write what would you say in each of the following situations: (3 Marks)

1. Someone says that the sphinx should be on the list of the wonders of the world. You agree.

. *1- I agree with you more.*

2. Your friend said a snake had escaped from the zoo and nobody knew where it was. Respond to this news

. *2- Oh no ! / How terrible !*

3. You smoked a cigarette and now you feel ill. You regret it.

. *3- I shouldn't have smoked a cigarette.*

1. You are asked about the disadvantages of smoking.

1- Smoking causes lung and heart diseases and smokers waste a lot of money on smoking.

2. Your sister says that the food you both had was tasty. Express your agreement.

2- I couldn't agree with you

3. You ask your teacher about the moral of the story Black Beauty.

. *3- Could you please explain to me the moral of the story Black Beauty ?*

1. You see a news report about poor people who live in Asia. you would like to be able to help them.

I wish that I could help these people.

2. A friend starts to read you an interesting story, but then suddenly stops.

2- Go on. / What else does it say ?

3. You would like to ask a teacher to explain why it is colder in winter than in summer.

3- Could you please explain to me why it is colder in the winter than in the summer ?

1. Your little brother ate a lot of sweets and now feels ill.

1- You shouldn't have eaten many sweets.

2. A friend starts to read you an interesting new story, but suddenly stops.

2- Go on . / What else does it say ?

3. You think that this lesson is very interesting. You want to know what your friend thinks of it.

3- What do you think of the lesson ?

1. your friend thinks that Waddy Rayyan waterfalls are fantastic. Express agreement.

1- I couldn't agree with you more.

2. Your little brother ate a lot of sweets and now feels ill.

2- You shouldn't have eaten many sweets.

3. Noha tells you about an exciting film. You want to know more.

3- Tell me more

1-You want to book a return ticket to Aswan .

1- Can I book a return ticket to Aswan ?

2-Someone thinks that Wadi Rayyan waterfalls are man - made wonders .

2- I'm afraid I totally disagree. / I feel completely the opposite.

3-A friend tells you that you have won a prize .

3- How wonderful ! / Really? I can't believe it.

1. You want to go to the beach, but your parents say it is too stormy.

1- How terrible ! / Oh no.

2. You need to borrow your friend`s dictionary.

2- Can I borrow your dictionary, please ?

3. You are at a restaurant; the waiter asks what you would like to drink.

3- I'd like to drink orange juice.

1. You hear that scientists have found a new effective medicine.

1- How wonderful !

2. Your brother did badly in the exam.

2- You should have studied hard.

3. You need to borrow your friends phone.

3- Can I borrow your phone, please ?

1. A friend was up late as he drank much coffee. Make past recommendation.

1- You shouldn't have drunk much coffee.

2. Invite your friend to have dinner with you at your house.

2- I'd like to invite you to have dinner with me at my home. /

Would you like to have dinner with me at my home ?

3. Ask your father politely about his plan for the summer holiday.

3- Could you please tell me about your plan for the summer holiday, Dad ?

=====

1. You want to book a return ticket to Luxor.

1- Can I book a return ticket to Luxor, please ?

2. Your classmate is trying to persuade you to go to the club, but you refuse.

2- I'm not interested in it. / I'm sorry. I'm busy.

3. You want to know a tourist's opinion about the pyramids.

3- What's your opinion about the Pyramids ?

/ What do you think of the Pyramids ?

=====

1. You want to know your friend's opinion of the science lesson.

1-What's your opinion about the science lesson? /

What do you

think of the science lesson?

2. You see some people leaving their rubbish on the beach.

2- How terrible ! Why do they do that? /

They should

put it in the bin.

3. You want to book a ticket from Minia to Cairo.

3- Can I book a ticket to Cairo, please ?

=====

1. Your friend says that English is difficult. You disagree.

1- I'm afraid I totally disagree. /

I feel completely the opposite. /

I

disagree with you.

2. You ask your friend politely about his plans for the summer holiday.

2- Could you please tell me about your plans for the summer holiday ?

3. Your brother told you that he couldn't find his new mobile.

3- How terrible ! / Oh dear! / I'm sorry to hear that.

=====

1. Ask your friend politely about the job he would like to do.

1- Could you please tell me about the job you would like to do ?

2. A friend tells you that he had an interesting morning. First, he went to the park. You want to know more.

2- Go on. / Tell me more.

3. You hear that scientists have found a new medicine which help many people.

3- How wonderful ! / I'm happy to hear that.

1. You need to borrow you friend`s laptop.

1- Can I borrow your laptop, please ?

2. You see a new report about poor people and you would like to help them.

2- I wish I could help these people.

3. There is a new café in your area. You want to know what your friend thinks about it.

3- What do you think of the new cafe ?

1. You would like to be able to help poor people in your country.

1- I wish I could help poor people in my country.

2. You want to know what your friend thinks of the English lesson.

2- What do you think of the English lesson ?

3. You ask a teacher when he / she started working at the school.

3- Could you please tell me when you started working at the school ?

1. Your friend thinks that the waterfalls are amazing. You completely agree.

1- I couldn't agree with you more. / That's exactly how I feel.

2. You need to borrow your friend`s mobile phone.

2- Can I borrow your mobile phone, please ?

3. Your friend is addicted to smoking. Advise him.

3- You should stop smoking. It's bad for health.

1. You brother wanted to go to the beach today, but you say that it is too windy.

1- I regret to tell you that it is too windy today.

2. You would like to ask your friend when he started working at hospital.

2- Could you please tell me when you started working at hospital ?

3. You see children leaving rubbish in the street.

3- How terrible ! / They shouldn't leave rubbish in the street. / They should put it in the bin.

1. A friend tells you that he has won a prize. You are very surprised.

1- How wonderful ! / - That's a great achievement !

2. You ask your teacher when he started working at this school.

2- Could you please tell me when you started working at this school ?

3. A friend asks you about an interesting film you both have just watched.

3- I think the film is very interesting.

=====

1. You advice a friend of yours who is ill.

1- You should see a doctor. /

If I were you, I'd see a doctor.

2. You ask your brother about his opinion of your new mobile.

2- What is your opinion of my new mobile ? /

What do you think of my new mobile ?

3. You respond to a terrible accident you watched on TV.

3- How terrible ! / Oh no.

=====

1. You wanted to go to the beach today, but your parents say that it is too windy.

1- I wish that it wasn't windy. / What a pity that it is windy.

2. Your friend says that the test you both did was very easy. You express your opinion.

2- I couldn't agree with you more. / I feel completely the opposite.

3. You want to borrow your friend's laptop.

3- Can I borrow your laptop, please ?

=====

1. You need to borrow your friend's laptop.

1- Can I borrow your laptop, please ?

2. Your cousin asks you when your school was built.

2- I think my school was built about 20 years ago.

3. You hear that scientists have found a new medicine which help many people.

3- How wonderful ! / I'm happy to hear that.

=====

1. You want to buy a train ticket to Aswan.

1- Can I book a ticket to Aswan, please ?

2. Ask your teacher politely what a star is made of.

2- Could you please explain to me what a star is made of ?

3. Your friend is reading about some common internet scams. Ask for more information.

3- Tell me more. / What else does it say ?

1. Your friend told you that he had won a lot of money .

1- How wonderful ! / I'm happy to hear that. / Congratulation.

2. You want to buy a train ticket . Ask the assistant for help .

2- Can I book a ticket, please ?

3. You ask your friend politely to give you his camera .

3- Could you give/lend me your camera, please?

1. You have just finished the hardest test that you have ever done. Your mother asks you how the test was.

It was extremely difficult.

2. You are taking a bus from Cairo to Alexandria. You want to know how long you will spend on the bus.

How long does the bus take ?

3. You wanted to go to the beach today, but your parents say that it is too windy.

I wish that it was not windy that. OR What a pity that it was windy!

4. You visited England in the winter. It was the coldest place that you have been. A friend asks you what the weather was like.

It was extremely cold.

5. You want to book a ticket for the train from Cairo to Luxor. You are coming back on Thursday.

Can I book a return ticket to Luxor , please ?

6. You see a news report about poor people who live in Asia. You would like to be able to help them.

I wish I could help other people.

7. You would like to ask a teacher when he / she started working at the school.

I wonder if you could tell me when you started working at the school.

8. A friend says that he / she thinks that the last lesson was the most interesting that you have had.

I couldn't agree with you more. OR I'm afraid. I disagree.

9. A friend starts to read you an interesting news story, but then suddenly stops.

Go on. / * What else does it say ?

10. You would like to ask a teacher to explain why it is colder in the winter than in the summer.

Could you explain to me why it is colder in the winter than in the summer?

11. You think that this lesson is very interesting. You want to know what your friend thinks of it.
 ✎ **What do you think of the lesson ?** OR *** How do you feel about the lesson ?**
12. A friend tells you that he / she had an interesting morning. First, he / she went to the park.
 You want to know more.
 ✎ **Go on.** OR *** Tell me more.**
13. Your friend asks you when your father was born. You aren't sure, but you give an answer.
 ✎ **Maybe in 1979.** OR *** About 40 years ago.**
14. You hear that a tourist was lost in the desert , but that he has just been found.
 ✎ **What a relief !** OR **/ phew !**
15. You hear that scientists have found a new medicine which will help many people.
 ✎ **How wonderful !**
16. Your parents say that they are taking you to the beach tomorrow.
 ✎ **Great ! / * I can't wait !** OR *** I'm looking forward to that.**
17. You see people leaving rubbish on a beach.
 ✎ **How terrible ! Why do you do this ?**
18. A friend tells you that you have won a prize.
 ✎ **Really ?** OR *** I can't believe it !** OR *** How wonderful !**

الى ابنائى وبناتى

هذه ثمرة جهدى لكم ارجو من الله عز وجل ان تنفعكم

يوجد فى هذه المذكرة حوالى ٨٧ موقف يشمل كل اجزاء المنهج

مع خالص تحياتى

مستر /محمد عبدالنواب السطوحى

الفيوم /مطرطارس /مدرسة فاطمة الزهراء

السؤال الثالث : القطعة

3- Read the following, then answer the questions: (5 Marks)

The computer has become one of the wonders of the world. It is clear that it affects all our lives. The computer systems are developing all the time in the future, you will probably drive your smart car from Cairo to Aswan. You don't have to worry during this long journey. If something goes wrong with your car engine, the computer in your car will help you . It will find out what is wrong and do what should be done. It will connect to the internet to find the nearest garage that can fix your car problems. This can be done by sending an email. It will be easy to know the problem. Your computer will also help you know the way if you get lost by using satellites. Really it is a great wonder!

A) Answer the following questions:

1- What do you think of the computer?

I think the computer is an important modern invention

2- How will the computer help drivers in the future?

If something goes wrong with the car engine, the computer will find out what is wrong and do what should be done. It will also help the drivers know the way if they got lost by using satellites

3- What does the underlined word it refer to?

.. " It " refers to the computer in your car

B) Choose the correct answer from a,b,c, or d :

4- The computer in your smart car will help you to

- a) sell your car b) build a garage c) lose the way
d) know what is wrong with your car

5) You will never feel while driving a smart car .

- a) happy b) safe c) worried d) relaxed

It is said that Egypt is the gift of the Nile. The Nile has always been the source of life in Egypt. To the world, it is the longest river on earth. But to the Egyptians, it means a lot. We get fresh water for different purposes from the Nile. Without it, there would not be such vast areas of green land. In addition, it is a source of fish. We owe the Nile food and drink. It gives beauty to everyone living in its banks. In summer, it is relief to people. They can enjoy fresh breeze sitting by it. They may also go on boat picnics and enjoy the scene of water hitting their boat. Furthermore, the Nile is an

important water way in Egypt. Boats carry people and good from north to south and the opposite way. In fact, the benefits of the Nile are countless.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- How does the Nile serve transport?

. - Boats carry people and goods from north to south and the opposite way. .

2- Why do you think that the Nile is the source of life in Egypt?

Because we get fresh water for different purposes and fish from the Nile. Without it, there wouldn't be such vast areas of green land. It gives beauty to everyone living on its banks.....

3- How can people enjoy themselves by the Nile?

. They can enjoy fresh breeze sitting by it

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The underlined pronoun "its" refers to

a) beauty b) drink c) food d) the Nile

5- The word relief in the passage means a feeling of

a) fair b) pain c) comfort d) sorry

=====

In the fifteenth of January, Usama went to visit his uncle in Aswan. The journey took about eleven hours. He left Cairo at seven o'clock in the morning. The journey was tiring for him. His cousins Ahmed and Hassan met him at the railway station. The weather was warm. Usama visited the high dam which produces electricity and stores water for times of need. He also went to the desert where he saw many of people working hard on the land. They do their best to change the desert into green land and produce more food. Usama travelled to Luxor where he stayed in a hotel. He visited the valley of the kings. He saw many monuments there. He talked with many tourists and told them a lot about ancient Egyptian monuments. At the end of the journey he came back to Cairo.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- Where does Usama live?

. Usama lives in Cairo. .

2- Why is High Dam useful?

Because it produces electricity and stores water for times of need

3- Why do you think that men do their best in the desert?

I think men do their best in the desert to change it into green land and produce more food

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The journey from Cairo to Aswan was

a) tiring b) pleasing c) interesting d) boring

5- The pronoun "them" refer to

a) monuments b) kings c) tourists d) farmers



Once, I invited some of my friends to have a light meal and some drinks. They agreed to my idea as all of us were hungry. We went into the nearest cafeteria. Each of us had some sandwiches and a cool drink. Then came the time of payment. To my surprise, I found no money in my pockets. I had changed my trousers and forgot to take the money. My face turned red . I didn't know what to do. I asked my friends if they had any money, but the money they had was not enough to pay the bill. The waiter became angry, and wanted to take us to the police. To our good luck, my cousin came in to have a cup of coffee. I told him about our bad situation. He smiled and paid the waiter who thought that we were thieves.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- Where did the writer and his friends have some sandwiches and drinks?

. In the nearest cafeteria. .

2- What does the underlined word they refer to?

. The underlined word " they " refers to the writer's friends.

3- Who paid the waiter?

The writer's cousin paid the waiter

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The waiter wanted to take them to the police because

a) they didn't pay for the sandwiches and drinks. b) they ate sandwiches.

c) they had cool drinks.

d) they stole some dishes.

5- The writer forgot the money

a) at the cafeteria. b) at home. c) with his cousin. d) with his friends.

=====

Life was quite different in the past. Everything was simpler. People used to talk a lot, especially within the same family. There were no televisions or any social media. Most people walked to work, stayed at home to talk and discuss any problem together to solve it. They went to bed early, so they used to go to work so fresh and interested in their work. Now, everything has changed. Man has no time to listen to whoever. People become much busier. They hardly get together. Now, modern technology helps people do their work fast and well. They can use it to communicate by writing emails, video call programmes, talking on the internet and voice calls through mobile phones. Technology can help you to do many things.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- Why did people in the past go to work so fresh and interested ?

. Because they went to bed early.

2- How does modern technology help people?

It helps people do their work fast and well.

3- Do you think life in the past was better than life now? Why / Why not?

. Yes, I do. Because everything was simpler .

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4) The underlined pronoun " it " refer to "

a)work b) technology c) video d)life

5) Now , people have time to meet and talk .

a)more b) much c) a lot d) less

Mark, who started the social networking site Facebook, was born in 1984 in New York, Mark first became interested in computers at the age of twelve. Then he invented a communication program. Mark's family used it to send messages to each other at home. His father, who was a dentist, also used it at work. At school Mark was very good at English, sports and other subjects, but he was most interested in computers. He won prizes in science, math and astronomy. When he went to university, he started working on a system which he later developed into Facebook. About two hundred and fifty million users are sharing information on Facebook every day

A) Answer the following questions : (3 Marks)

1-When did Mark first became interested in computers ?

Mark first became interested in computers at the age of twelve

2-What subjects was he very good at ?

. He was very good at English, sports and other subjects

3-Do you like Facebook ? Why ? Why not ?

Yes, I do. Because I communicate with my friends and get a lot of information

B) Choose the correct answer : (2 Marks)

4-The main idea of this passage is that

a)Marks's father was a dentist

b)Mark was from New York

c)Mark invented a popular social networking site

d)Mark was born in 1984

5-The underlined pronoun " it " refers to

a)school

b)work

c)home

d) a communication program

Mr. Saed is a teacher of English. He works hard to make his small family happy. One day ,his daughter Hanan asked him to bring her a new mobile as her old one was broken. It didn't have a good camera. He decided to buy the mobile and present it to his daughter on her birthday. He prepared the money needed. On his way to the shop, he met an old lady who asked him to help her as she was in need for a lot of money for her sick husband. Mr Saeed was puzzled and he thought a long and hard. When he went home that night, he told his family what has happened. His daughter wasn't sad that she wouldn't have a new mobile. The whole family spent a wonderful night with their kind-hearted father

A) Answer the following questions:

1- What did Hanan ask her father to do?

She asked her father to bring her a new mobile phone as her old one was broken

2- Why did the old woman need money?

The old woman needed money for her sick husband.

3- What would you do if you were Mr. Saeed?

If I were Mr. Saeed, I would buy a mobile for Hanan.

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The word it refers to

a) money **b) the old mobile** c) the new mobile d) the camera

5- Mr. Saeed

a) bought the mobile b) was sick **c) helped the old woman** d) broke the mobile

Antarctica is the coldest place on Earth. it is almost completely covered with snow and ice. In some places, the ice is almost 5 kilometres thick. There are no trees or bushes. Very small plants are the only things that grow there. This beautiful white land is nearly as big as Europe and the USA put together. In winter, it seems to double in size because ice forms in the sea around it. When the sea is frozen, it is very difficult for ships to reach Antarctica. So the scientists who work there know **they** cannot leave until summer comes. In summer, The days are very long and the nights are very short. In winter, it is dark most of the time. At the South Pole, there is only one "day" and one "night" in the whole year.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- What kind of plants grow in Antarctica?

Very small plants grow in Antarctica

2- What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

The underlined pronoun " they " refers to the scientists who work in Antarctica.

3- Why can't the scientists leave Antarctica in winter?

Because it's very difficult for ships to reach Antarctica as the sea is frozen, so they have to wait until summer comes.

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Antarctica is the on earth.

a) **coldest** b) warmest c) hottest d) highest

5- In winter, the size of Antarctica

a) decreases **b) increases** c) reduces d) lessens

هيهات هيهات لا ينفع الندم على ما فات

Four-year old Sara sat with her mother reading a book about tigers and how they are in danger. The book used difficult words that her mother had to explain what they meant. sara learnt that tigers are getting fewer, and their places are getting smaller because new cities are built in their areas. Countries have started programs to help protect the tigers from becoming **extinct** which mean that the tigers will finally die out if something isn't done to save them. National Save The Tiger Month was begun to tell people about the problems the tigers are having. Finally, Sara suggested that her family keep a tiger at home. Her mother smiled. They would have another way to help tigers.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- What is the book they read about?

. 1- They read a book about tigers and how they are in danger

2- How old is Sara?

2- Sara is four years old

3- Why do you think Sara's mother smiled

3- Sara's mother smiled because Sara suggested that her family keep a tiger at home.

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The underlined word "extinct" means

- a) disappear b) increase c) exist d) survive

5- Countries start a program to the tigers.

- a) connect b) protect c) hunt d) detect

=====

Life was quite different in the past. Everything was simpler. People used to talk a lot, especially within the same family. There were no televisions or any social media. Most people walked to work, stayed at home to talk and discuss any problem together to solve it. They went to bed early, so they used to go to work so fresh and interested in their work. Now, everything has changed. Man has no time to listen to whoever. People become much busier. They hardly get together. Now, modern technology helps people do their work fast and well. They can use it to communicate by writing emails, video call programmes, talking on the internet and voice calls through mobile phones. Technology can help you to do many things.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- Why did people in the past go to work so fresh and interested ?

. Because they went to bed early.

2- How does modern technology help people?

It helps people do their work fast and well.

3- Do you think life in the past was better than life now? Why / Why not?

. Yes, I do. Because everything was simpler .

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4) The underlined pronoun " it " refer to

a)work b) technology c) video d)life

5) Now , people have time to meet and talk .

a)more b) much c) a lot d) less

Life was quite different in the past. Everything was simpler. People used to talk a lot, especially within the same family. There were no televisions or any social media. Most people walked to work, stayed at home to talk and discuss any problem together to solve it. They went to bed early, so they used to go to work so fresh and interested in their work. Now, everything has changed. Man has no time to listen to whoever. People become much busier. They hardly get together. Now, modern technology helps people do their work fast and well. They can use it to communicate by writing emails, video call programmes, talking on the internet and voice calls through mobile phones. Technology can help you to do many things.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- Why did people in the past go to work so fresh and interested ?

. Because they went to bed early.

2- How does modern technology help people?

It helps people do their work fast and well.

3- Do you think life in the past was better than life now? Why / Why not?

. Yes, I do. Because everything was simpler .

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4) The underlined pronoun " it " refer to "

a)work b) technology c) video d)life

5) Now , people have time to meet and talk .

a)more b) much c) a lot d) less

Reading is very interesting and attractive. It improves our memory. Most people like reading to get information about different subjects. Everyone should learn to read. A book is a good friend. Reading books helps us to spend a nice and useful time. It gives us information about different persons and things. My friend Yasmeen likes reading. She usually reads in her free time. She spends a lot of her money on buying books. She wants to be a writer. She is the best friend to the school library. She usually goes at break. The school library is having books which she likes very much. She sometimes writes funny stories. Her friends like to read them. All teachers like her because she is intelligent, active and honest.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- What kind of information does reading give us?

1- It gives us information about different persons and things.

2- When does Yasmeeen read?

2- She usually reads in her free time.

3- Do you think that the book is a good friend? Why / Why not?

3- Yes, I do. Because it helps us get information about different subjects.

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The underlined word "them" refers to

a) books b) bookshops c) funny stories d) friends

5- The underlined word "intelligent" means

a) clever b) stupid c) foolish d) lazy

Before university, there are two types of education in Egypt; The general education and the technical education. Students at technical schools learn skills that used in the world of work. There are now many more technical schools around Egypt. They teach students skills needed for industry, farming or nursing. Students study at these schools for three or five years. Under the Egyptian dual education system, students of technical schools spend two days at their school and four days at a place of work where they can practise their new skills weekly. Also, the top-level students at technical schools can join the university. They can get very good jobs. Life would be impossible without electricians, nurses, mechanics and farmers.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- How many types of education are there in Egypt?

1- There are two types of education in Egypt ; the general education and the technical education.

2- What do technical schools teach?

2- They teach students skills needed for industry, farming or nursing

3- Do you think technical schools important for Egypt? Why / Why not?

...3- Yes, I do. Because students at technical schools learn skills that used in the world of work and they can help improve our country.

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- What do you think the word "dual" means?

a) one b) two c) three d) four

5- The person who takes care of people is a

a) farmer b) mechanic c) electrician d) nurse

=====

I'm a student in the third year at a prep school. My school is clean and beautiful. It is the biggest one in the town; I like it very much for many reasons. First I'm lucky to have good teachers, specially the teachers of English. Second, I can practice my hobby in my school such as drawing, free reading in its big library, playing music and playing football. Third, I and all the students can learn how to use the computer and the internet. My school day starts at 8 o'clock in the morning and ends at 2 o'clock. In the afternoon. Students don't go to school on Friday and Saturday every week. . In short, I'm very proud of my school and there is no one proud of this school more than me.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- Why does the writer consider himself lucky?

1- Because he has good teachers, especially the teacher of English.

2- What are the hobbies that the writer can practise in his school?

2- Drawing, free reading in its big library, playing music and playing football.

3- What does the underlined word "it" refer to ?

3- The underlined word " it " refers to the writer's school.

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The writer's school is a

a) primary school b) prep school c) secondary school d) school for kG

5- The writer and all students spend hours at school every day.

a) 2 b) 4 c) 8 d) 6

=====

An engineer had worked hard for a building company. When the engineer got older, he decided to stop working. He wanted to relax. The owner of the company asked him to do one last job for the company. It was to build a beautiful house. The engineer agreed but he wasn't interested in doing his work well. He didn't use good building materials. He didn't think about the safety of the people who would live in that house. He only wanted to finish the job earlier to enjoy rest of his life. When he finished, the house appeared beautiful but wasn't well-built. On his last day in the company, in front of all people, the owner of the company gave him the key of the house and said: "This is for you; you worked hard for the company and we want to give you a reward. The new house which you have built is yours."

A) Answer the following questions:

1- What was the engineer's decision when he got older?

1- He decided to stop working

2- What was the engineer's last job for the company?

2- It was to build a beautiful house

3- How was the new house?

It appeared beautiful but it wasn't well-built...

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The underlined word "him" refers to

a) the key b) the engineer c) all people d) the company

5- The company wanted to the engineer.

a) reward b) punish c) stop d) refuse
a) will go b) could go c) won't go d) have gone

=====

We are much luckier than our grandfathers because we enjoy lots of things which have made our life easier, more enjoyable and comfortable. Until a short time ago, people had much trouble travelling from a village to the town, or making a long distance phone

call. Now we enjoy modern means of transport and communication. If you asked me which modern invention has affected the world most, I'd certainly answer that the internet which I like most. You can do many jobs using the internet in a faster, easier or cheaper way than ever. Nowadays few people post letters which have been replaced by emails. On other hand, fewer people go to libraries because they can get any information they need online. We can also shop, pay bills, study or apply for jobs on the internet.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- Which invention does the writer like most?

1- The internet. / The writer likes the internet most

2- The internet has made life easier. Give two examples from the text.

2- You can do many jobs using the internet in a faster, easier or cheaper way than ever. People can get any information they need online.

3- Do you think that the internet has bad effects on reading? Why / Why not?

3- Yes, I do. Because fewer people go to libraries and reading becomes less interesting.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The underlined word "which" refers to

a) jobs b) libraries c) letters d) transport

5- The word few means

a) a small number of b) a large number of c) more and more d) so many

We were having lunch. The food smelled good and tasted fantastic. There were also sweets to eat in the end. My four-year old sister was sitting next to mum. Mum wanted to help her but she wanted to depend on herself. Suddenly, a small cat came in to the room. We didn't know how it came in. It jumped up in to the table near my sister who was frightened and dropped the jug of water. The jug broke and the water ran and wet our clothes. But the cat didn't care. It strangely took part in the meal. Mum stood up and gave it some food to eat. Then, the act went away and we put our things right

A) Answer the following questions:

1- What was the meal like?

It was good and fantastic.

2- Where did the little girl sit?

She sat next to her mother.

3- Why did the mother sit her daughter in this place?

Because the mother wanted to help her daughter.

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The underline word "herself" refers to the

a) meal b) cat c) little sister d) mother

5- The writer's sister was years old.

a) four b) three c) five d) six

Bees live and work together in one team. There are three kinds of bees: workers, male bees and queens. Only the queen bee can live inside. If she is lost or died, the other bees will stop their work. Bees are very wise and busy little insects. They all work together to build cells of wax for their honey. Each bee takes its **proper** place and does its own work. Some go out and gather honey from the flowers; others stay at home and work inside. The cells which they built are all of one shape and size and **they** have six sides. But the male bees do not work. Before the winter comes, all of them are driven out of the bees' house so as not to eat the honey which they did not gather.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- What happens to the male bees before the winter? Why?

1- Before the winter comes, all of them are driven out from the bees' house so as not to eat the honey which they didn't gather.

2- How do you know that the bees are wise and busy?

2- They all work together to build cells of wax for their honey. Each bee takes its proper place and does its own work.

3- When do the bees stop their work?

3- The bees stop their work when the queen is lost or dead.

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The word "proper" means

a) wrong

b) correct

c) far

d) near

5- The underlined word "They" refers to the

a) cells

b) bees

c) flowers

d) insects

"Shark" is a word which frightens swimmers all over the world. Many people think the sea is full of dangerous sharks. They think that all sharks want to kill them. But most kinds of sharks never attack people. There are more than 350 different kinds of sharks. Only about four are very dangerous to people. They are the white pointer, the tiger shark, the bull shark and the white tip. Sharks eat fish and other sea animals. They find their food by seeing it, hearing it and smelling it. They can hear very well in the water and they can smell food hundreds of metres away. It's easy to understand why people are so frightened of sharks. But they don't attack people very often. There are only about seventy five shark attacks in the world each year. And only about ten people are killed by sharks. But, each year, people kill millions of sharks.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- Which kinds of sharks are dangerous to people?

1- They are the white pointer, the tiger shark, the bull shark and the white tip

2- What do sharks eat?

Sharks eat fish and other sea animals

3- Who do you think is more dangerous, sharks or people?

3- I think people are more dangerous than sharks because they kill millions of sharks each year.

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Sharks can food hundreds of metres away.

a) attack b) kill c) smell d) taste

5- sharks are dangerous to people.

a) All b) A few c) Many d) Most

=====

Anne is from England. This year she went on holiday to Egypt. She spent two days in Cairo and then took the sleeping train to Luxor. She stayed there for three days and then went to relax on the Red Seacoast for five days. She arrived in Cairo in January. It is very cold in January in England, so Anne was delighted to see the sunshine and enjoy the warm Egyptian weather. Anne visited many famous historical places during her holiday such as the pyramids, the sphinx. she also saw the temple of Karnak and the valley of Kings and the Queens. She also had time to relax on the beach and swim in the Red sea. She had such a wonderful holiday that she decided to come again next year.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- What nationality is Anne?

Anne is English..

2- How did Anne travel to Luxor?

. She travelled to Luxor on the sleeping train

3- How long did Anne stay on the Red Sea coast?

She stayed on the Red Sea coast for five days..

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Anne`s holiday in Egypt lasted for days.

a) seven b) eight c) ten d) eleven

5- Anne enjoyed her holiday in Egypt Because

a) The weather was warmer than England b) the weather was colder than England
c) It was hot in January in Egypt d) it was hot in January in England

=====

Ali and his family decided to go on holiday for a week. They chose a holiday near the sea because everyone in the family enjoys the seaside. They went to Hurgada where water was very calm and warm. They liked diving, swimming and saw a lot of sea life. They also enjoyed seeing the coloured fish. Mr. Ali`s wife liked going on walks near the beach and watching sunset. She also liked fishing on a boat as it is her favourite hobby. She was pleased there. Mr. Ali`s son liked to go diving and do water sports. At noon all the family went to the cinema then they went to a restaurant to have their dinner. At the end of their

holiday, they went shopping and bought some lovely presents to their friends. Really all the family spent a wonderful holiday.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- Why did Ali and his family choose a holiday near the sea?

. Because everyone in the family enjoys the seaside

2- Do you think the family's holiday was enjoyable? Why / Why?

Yes, I do. Because they did many wonderful things on their holiday.

3- What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

. The underlined pronoun refers to Ali and his family.

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Ali and his family decided to go on holiday for days.

a) fourteen

b) ten

c) seven

d) eight

5- Ali's wife liked

a) riding horses

b) fishing

c) running

d) reading

Should we work all the time without having a rest? The answer is that we can't continue working without stopping. From time to time, we need some rest to do some interesting activities. If we don't do that, we can make mistakes and our work might get worse. If we work all the time, we may lose the ability to think clearly and have no energy to continue working, so sleep is very important. It renews our energy. sports and games are also important especially for people who stay in closed offices. They are not able to do exercise. Some activities such as swimming and walking may give them a lot of energy. So, we shouldn't waste our weekends we should try to forget all about our work. We can then enjoy ourselves.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- How can we renew our energy?

. We can renew our energy by sleeping

2- What does the underlined word "it" refer to?

The underlined word "it" refers to sleep.

3- Do you think that having a rest is very important? Why?

3- Yes, I do. If we don't do that, we can make mistakes and our work might get worse. If we work all the time, we may lose the ability to think clearly and have no energy to continue working

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Working all the time without stopping makes us feel

a) happy

b) healthy

c) tired

d) strong

5- We should during the weekends.

a) forget our work

b) work more

c) stay in offices

d) make

mistakes

الى ابنائى وبنائى هذه ثمرة جهدى لكم ارجو من الله عزوجل ان تنفعكم يوجد فى هذه المذكرة حوالى ٢٢ قطعة تشمل كل اجزاء المنهج مع خالص تحياتى

Black Beauty

4- b . Answer the following questions: (2Marks)

1. Why do you think that Black Beauty was sold at part of the market where the horses were old or ill-looking?

1- Because Black Beauty had been ill and now he looked ill.

2. What do you think of Skinner?

2- I think Skinner was a bad owner because he worked seven days a week and never gave his horses a good rest or enough to eat.

1. Do you think that Jerry was kind to his horses? Why / Why not?

1- Yes, I do. Because he gave them good food, fresh water and a good rest. He pulled the reins lightly.

2. Why do you think Skinner made Black Beauty work hard?

2- Because he was very poor and had to work hard to get enough money to live.

1- Do you think that Filcher deserve to be arrested? Why/ Why not?

1- Yes, I do. Because he wasn't a good man and only thought about himself and his family, not about Black Beauty.

2. Why do you think each of Ginger`s owners paid less money for her?

2- Because she was becoming weaker, so she couldn't work very well.

1. Do you think that Filcher deserve to be arrested? Why/ Why not?

1- Yes, I do . Because he wasn't a good man and only thought about himself and his family, not about Black Beauty.

2. Why do you think Ginger stop kicking people who weren't good to her?

2- Because she wasn't strong enough to kick any more.

1. Why do you think it is important to watch animal workers carefully?

1- Because they might steal animal's food.

2. Do you think that Skinner was right to sell Black Beauty? Why / Why not?

2- Yes, I do. Because Black Beauty was no good as he couldn't work.

or No, I don't. Because Skinner didn't give Black Beauty enough food to work well.

1-Do you think that Skinner was a bad owner ? Why ?

1- Yes, I do. Because he worked seven days a week and never gave his horses a good rest or enough to eat.

2-Do you think that Flicher deserved to be arrested ? Why ?

2- Yes, I do. Because he wasn't a good man and only thought about himself and his family, not about Black Beauty.

Why do you think Jerry became ill?

Because he had to wait outside the house of a rich man and it was very cold.

1. Why do you think that Black Beauty was worried when Jerry found work with Mrs Fowler?

1- Because he was becoming old and he knew that he might have more difficult work to do in the future.

2. What do you think of the two men who jumped into the taxi before the poor woman?

2- I think they were impolite and unkind.

3. What do you think might have happened if Black Beauty continued to work for skinner a long time?

3- I think Black Beauty might have died.

4.Why do you think that Jerry took Captain to work on black Beauty`s first morning in London?

4- I think he didn't want Black Beauty to have a difficult first day in London.

1. What did York think about the special reins?

- 1- He was angry about the special reins but he could do nothing.

2. Do you think that Skinner and Filcher were kind to Beauty? Why / Why not?

2- No, both of them were unkind to Black Beauty. Filcher stole his food and gave it to his rabbits. Skinner made him work hard without giving him good food or good rest.

1. Do you think Filcher deserve to be arrested? Why / Why not?

1- Yes, I do. Because he wasn't a good man and only thought about himself and his family, not about Black Beauty.

2. Why do you think that Jerry became ill?

2- Because he had to wait outside the house of a rich man and it was very cold.

1. Why do you think that Ginger stopped kicking people who weren't good to her?

1- Because she wasn't strong enough to kick any more.

2. Why do you think that Jerry became ill?

2- Because he had to wait outside the house of a rich man and it was very cold.

1. Why did Black Beauty think that Jerry was the best owner he had had?

1- Because he gave Black Beauty good food, fresh water and rest and he was a good driver. He pulled the reins lightly.

2. Why do you think that Black Beauty felt sorry for some of the taxi drivers and their horses?

2- Because they had to work very long hours to get enough money. Some of them worked seven days a week.

3. Why do you think Jerry became ill?

3- Because he had to wait outside the house of a rich man and it was cold. He coughed all the time and became ill.

1. Do you think that Ginger was right to start to kick when they were in the carriage? Why / Why not?

1- Yes, because she was very uncomfortable. /

No, she should have worked hard like Black Beauty.

2-Do you think we learned from the story "Black Beauty"?

2- I learned to be kind to horses and people.

Also, I learned not to be a liar. I learned that life isn't always comfortable but it is full of troubles and I should face these troubles and solve them.

1. Do you think that Jerry was a kind man? Why / Why not?

1- Yes, I do. Because he took the poor woman with her son to hospital for free.

2. Why do you think Ginger stopped kicking people who weren't good to her?

2- Because she wasn't strong enough to kick any more.

3. Do you think Filcher deserve red to be arrested? Why / Why not?

3- Yes, I do. Because he wasn't a good man and only thought about himself and his family, not about Black Beauty.

4. Why do you think that each of Ginger`s owners paid less money for her?

Because she was becoming weaker and weaker,so she could not work very well .

4. Do you think that the poor woman was pleased with Jerry Barker? Why?

4- Yes, I do. Because Jerry took her to hospital for free.

5. Do you think that Black Beauty was angry with Ginger Because Black Beauty was hurt? Why / Why not?

5- No, because he realised that Ginger only did this because the reins were uncomfortable.

1- Do you think that the people who looked at Black beauty at the market were very poor?

1- Because they wanted to buy a horse for as little money as possible.

1. Do you think the Earl really loved the horses? Why?

1- No, I don't. Because he decided to sell them as they were hurt.

2. Do you think Black Beauty found it difficult about living in London? Why / Why not?

2- Yes, I do. Because there was a lot of noise and a lot of people and it was difficult for him to find his way between the carriages.

3. Do you think Filcher deserved to be arrested? Why / Why not?

3- Yes, I do. Because he wasn't a good man and only thought about himself and his family, not about Black Beauty.

4. Why do you think Black Beauty felt sorry for both the horses and their drivers?

4- Because they had to work very long hours to get enough money. Some of them had to work seven days a week.

5. Why do you think the reins were uncomfortable?

**5- Because it was difficult to pull a carriage up a hill with them on . They were tightened a little more every day.
our life.**

1. Do you think the story had a happy ending ? Why ?

1 Yes, I do. Black Beauty's work at Miss Bloomfield's home was easy and he felt strong again. His troubles were over.

سؤال التوصيل فى القصة

4- a . Match the items in column a with those in column b:

(2 Marks)

(A)	(B)
1. Filcher b	a) didn't feel strong enough to work well or kick people.
2. Black Beauty c	b) was arrested for stealing Black Beauty's food.
3. Ginger a	c) was too weak to carry the family and their luggage up the hill.
4. Mrs Fowler e	d) was a woman who lived in the country with her two sisters.
	e) was a wealthy woman who had a house in the country.

a . Match the items in column a with those in column b: (2 Marks)

(A)

(B)

- | | | |
|----------------|-------|---|
| 1. Mr Barry | (d) | a) the horse who works with Black Beauty driving taxis. |
| 2. Lady Smythe | (e) | b) A wealthy woman who has a house in the country. |
| 3. Captain | (a) | c) Earl Smythe`s daughter. |
| 4. Mrs Fowler | (b) | d) A businessman and Black Beauty`s owner in Bath. |
| | () | e) liked the latest fastion. |

4- a . Match the items in column a with those in column b: (2 Marks)

(A)

(B)

- | | | |
|----------------|-------|--|
| 1. Lady Smythe | (c) | a) was Jerry`s son. |
| 2. Filcher | (e) | b) was a rich man who bought Black Beauty. |
| 3. Harry | (a) | c) liked her horses to wear special reins. |
| 4. Mr Barry | (b) | d) had no problems all his life. |
| | () | e) gave Black Beauty less food each week. |

4- a . Match the items in column a with those in column b: (2 Marks)

(A)

(B)

- | | | |
|-----------------|-------|---|
| 1. Earl park | (c) | a) was Jerry`s son. |
| 2. Mrs Fowler | (d) | b) was pleased with his new owner. |
| 3. Harry | (a) | c) was much bigger than Birtwick park. |
| 4. Black Beauty | (b) | d) could find work for Jerry. |
| | () | e) gave Black Beauty less food each week. |

4- a . Match the items in column a with those in column b: (2 Marks)

(A)

(B)

- | | | |
|----------------|-----|--|
| 1. Jerry | (d) | a) went out with the taxi carriage in the morning. |
| 2. Captain | (a) | b) was accused of stealing the horses` food. |
| 3. Lady Smythe | (e) | c) an old farmer. |
| 4. Filcher | (b) | d) became ill because he got so cold and tired . |
| | | e) liked her horses to use special reins. |

4- a . Match the items in column a with those in column b:

(A)

(B)

- | | | |
|-----------------|-----|--|
| 1. Filcher | (b) | a) wasn't able to run fast after her fall. |
| 2. Jerry | (d) | b) used to steal the horses` food. |
| 3. Ginger | (a) | c) didn't find it easy to work in London at first. |
| 4. Black Beauty | (c) | d) took the woman and her son to the hospital without money. |
| | | e) was an old farmer |

4- a . Match the items in column a with those in column b: (2 Marks)

(A)	(B)
1. Jerry	(d) a) went out with the taxi carriage in the morning.
2. Captain	(a) b) was accused of stealing the horses` food.
3. Lady Smythe	(e) c) an old farmer.
4. Filcher	(b) d) became ill because he got so cold and tired .
	e) liked her horses to use special reins.

4- a . Match the items in column a with those in column b:

(A)	(B)
1. Lady Smythe	a) became healthy again after Mr. Thourghood and his grandson looked after him.
2. Jerry	b) was another taxi driver who bought Black Beauty.
3. Black Beauty	c) was a very good driver and was kind to Black Beauty.
4. skinner	d) liked her horses to use special reins.
	e) was much bigger than Birtwick park.

1-d

2-c

3-a

4-b

4- a . Match the items in column a with those in column b: (2 Marks)

(A)	(B)
1. Polly	a) was a young horse at Earlshall park.
2. Miss Blomefield	b) was the man who worked for Earl Smythe.
3. Lizzie	c) was Jerry`s wife.
4. York	d) was Jerry`s child.
	e) was the woman who lived in the country with her two sisters

1-c

2-e

3-a

4-b

4- a . Match the items in column a with those in column b: (2 Marks)

(A)	(B)
1. Filcher	a) was pleased to see Black Beauty again.
2. Skinner	b) is a man who works for Earl Smythe.
3. Joe Green	c) was a kind taxi driver.
4. York	d) was arrested for stealing Black Beauty`s food.
	e) didn`t give Black Beauty enough to eat.

1-d

2-e

3-a

4-b

④ A) Match column (A) with column (B): (2 Marks)

A	B
1 – Lady Smythe (b)	a- went out with the taxi carriage in the morning.
2 – Earlshall Park (e)	b – liked her horses to use special reins.
3 – Captain (a)	c- recognized Black Beauty from his white foot and white star..
4- Joe Green (c)	d- know a man in bath who wanted a new horse.
	e- was much bigger than Birtwick park.

④ A) Match column (A) with column (B): (2 Marks)

A	B
1 – The doctor (b)	a- had easier work in the end.
2 – Black Beauty (a)	b – told Jerry that he had to stop driving a taxi.
3 – Harry (e)	c- was accused of stealing the horses' food.
4- Flicher (c)	d- was a rich man.
	e- was Jerry's son.

④ A) Match column (A) with column (B): (2 Marks)

A	B
1 – Lady Smythe b	a- wasn't able to run very fast after the fall.
2 – Filcher e	b – liked the latest fashions.
3 – Ginger a	c- was Jerry's son.
4- Black Beauty d	d- was taken to a large field to give him good food.
	e- was accused of stealing the horses' food.

④ A) Match column (A) with column (B): (2 Marks)

A	B
1 – Earlshall Park c	a - Was Jerry's son
2 – Mrs. Fowler d	b - Was pleased with his new owner.
3 - Harry a	c – was much bigger than Birtwick Park.
4 – Black Beauty b	d – could find work for Jerry.
	e – gave Black beauty less food each week.



مستر / محمد عبد التواب السطوحى

٠١٠٦٧٤٣٤٨٩٥



Match column A with column B

	A	B
b	1-Black Beauty	a- liked the latest fashion
c	2-Ginger	b- was the horse Lady Anne liked to ride
e	3- York	c- said, "if they don't tighten the reins more, I will do what they ask me"
a	4- Lady Smythe	d- was much smaller than Earl Smythe's house at Earls Hall Park
		e- was Earl Smythe's helper.

	A	B
e	1-Black Beauty	a- was accused of stealing the horses' food.
d	2- Mr. Barry	b- suggested buying good food for Black Beauty for a few weeks.
b	3- Mr. Barry's friend	c- said, "If they cannot pull a carriage, we must sell them."
a	4- Flicher.	d- was a rich man who bought Black Beauty
		e- was taken to a market for horses

	A	B
b	1- Jerry Barker	a- always helped to look after Black Beauty and worked hard
c	2- Captain	b- was the best owner and a kind taxi driver
a	3- Jerry's son, Harry	c- was the horse that went out with the taxi carriage in the morning
e	4- Black Beauty	d- examined Black Beauty carefully.
		e- was pleased with his new owner.

	A	B
c	1- Polly	a - believed that a pound wouldn't help if it made the horse tired.
d	2- Ginger	b- was given food before walking for many kilometres.
a	3- Jerry	c- was Jerry's wife.
b	4- Black Beauty	d- wasn't able to run very fast after the fall.
		e- was Jerry's son.

	A	B
e	1- The doctor	a -had easier work in the end.
d	2- Skinner	b- took Black Beauty to a large field to give him good food.
b	3- Mr. Thoroughgood	c- had no problems all his life.
a	4- Black Beauty	d- was also a taxi driver.
		e- told Jerry that he should stop driving a taxi.

Why do you think that Skinner told the girl not to worry after she said that Black Beauty looked too weak to carry their bags?

I think Skinner told the girl not to worry because he didn't want to lose money. He had to work for seven days a week to get enough money, even when his horses were weak or ill.

Why do you think that Black Beauty was sold at the part of the market where the horses were old or ill-looking?

Because Black Beauty had been ill and now he looked old.

Q- Why do you think that the rich man did not apologise to Jerry when he had to wait for him in the cold?

The rich man probably thought that it was Jerry's job to wait for him. He did not think that this might be difficult for Jerry and Black Beauty.

Q- Do you think that the man should pay Jerry for the time he waited outside the house? Why? / Why not?

Yes, he should pay him. If Jerry did not wait, he could take other passengers to places and get more money.

Q- How easy do you think it was for people to travel around London at this time?

Suggested answer: It was probably quite difficult because there were no cars, trains or buses. Only wealthy people could take a taxi or carriage because they were probably expensive.

Q- Why do you think that Jerry took Captain to work on Black Beauty's first morning in London?

I think he did not want Black Beauty to have a difficult first day.

Q- Why do you think that one of the taxi drivers says this to Jerry when he sees Black Beauty for the first time?

He can see that Black Beauty is a strong, healthy horse. Perhaps he thinks that he is too good to do hard, difficult work.

Why do you think that Skinner makes Black Beauty work so hard?

He was very poor and had to work hard to get enough money to live. He probably did not think that the health of his horse was important.

- At the station, do you think that Skinner knew that Black Beauty was too weak to carry the family and their bags? Why? / Why not?

I think that he knew, although he told the girl that Black Beauty was OK. However, he needed to take the family to get more money.

Do you think that Ginger was right to start to kick? Why / Why not?

Suggested: Yes, because she was very uncomfortable./No. She should have worked hard like Black Beauty.

Do you think that Beauty was angry with Ginger because he was hurt? Why? / Why not?

Suggested: No because he realised that Ginger only did this because the reins were uncomfortable

- Why do you think that Earl Smythe said that he might not get much money for Ginger?

Because Ginger's knees were badly damaged. She also does not always do what her owners want.

Do you think Filcher deserved to be arrested? Why?

He wanted to give it to his rabbits so that he could get more money for them at the market. He was not a good man and only thought about himself and his family, not about Black Beauty.

- Do you think that Black Beauty was angry with Ginger after the accident? Why?/ Why not?

Suggested: No. Although the accident damaged his knees, it meant he did not have to pull the carriage with the reins. He understood why she did this and was still friends with Ginger.



Why do you think that each of Ginger's owners paid less money for her?

Because she was becoming weaker and weaker, so she could not work very well.



Do you think that people were always happy to have Jerry as a taxi driver? Why? / Why

He was probably not popular with everyone, because he did not always do what people asked him to do.

الى ابنائى وبناتى

مع خالص تمنياتى بالتوفيق

محمد عبد التواب سطوحى

هذه ثمرة جهدى لكم ارجو من الله عز وجل ان تنفعكم

يوجد فى هذه المذكرة حوالى ٧٥ سؤال فى القصة تيشمل كل اجزاء

القصة متمثلة فى نوعى سؤالى القصة

6- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning

1. I am sure that he travelled by bus.

(must)

1- *He must have travelled by bus.*

2. First we booked the tickets. Then we went to the concert.

(..... before)

2- *We had booked the tickets before we went to the concert.*

3. They have painted the building again.

(been)

3- *The building has been painted again (by them).*

1. She punished her son because he had not told the truth. (If)

1- *If her son had told the truth, she wouldn't have punished him.*

2. " Will you finish your homework before dinner " (Kareem asked his sister)

2- *Karim asked his sister if she would finish her homework before dinner.*

3. After we had visited the museum, we had lunch. (until)

3- *We didn't have lunch until we had visited the museum.*

1. Hany's arm hurts. perhaps he broke it.

(might)

1- *Hany's arm hurts. He might have broken it.*

2. " Stand up, please " the teacher said to Ali.

(ordered)

2- *The teacher ordered Ali to stand up.*

3. I liked the book a lot, so I decided to read it again.

(reread)

3- *I liked the book a lot, so I decided to reread it.*

1. "What is the fastest way to Capital Bank?"

(I asked)

1- *I asked what the fastest way was to Capital Bank.*

2. I tried the fish at the restaurant , but I regret it.

(Shouldn't)

2- *I shouldn't have tried the fish at the restaurant.*

3. Perhaps if we see the teacher, she can help us with our homework. (might)

3- *If we see the teacher, she might be able to help us with our homework.*

1. Why can't I feel the earth turn?" Aya said to the teacher. (asked)

1- *Aya asked the teacher why she couldn't feel the earth turn.*

2. They have collected a lot of money for the charity (been)

2- *A lot of money has been collected for the charity by them.*

3. My father promised to buy a tablet for my sister (will)

3- *My father will buy a tablet for my sister.*

1- " Keep working " said the teacher to the class.

(encouraged)

1- *The teacher encouraged the class to keep working.*

2- They have painted the building .

(been)

2- *The building has been painted by them*

.

3-I liked this story a lot, so I decided to read it again . (reread)

3- I like this story a lot, so I decided to reread it.

1. I tried the fish at the restaurant ,but I regret it. (shouldn't)

1- You shouldn't have tried the fish at the restaurant.

2. First, I studied my lessons, then I did my housework. (After)

2- After I had studied my lessons, I did my homework.

3. " sit down" the teacher said to Ahmed. (ordered)

3- The teacher ordered Ahmed to sit down.

1. It is not possible that you saw Salma yesterday. (can't)

1- You can't have seen Salma yesterday.

2. After we had visited the museum, we decided to have lunch. (until)

2- We didn't decide to have lunch until we had visited the museum.

3. Leila has made a cake for the family party. (A cake)

3- A cake has been made for the family party by Leila.

1. "Stand up." the teacher said to me. (ordered)

1- The teacher ordered me to stand up.

2. I must have left my notebook at home. (sure)

2- I'm sure I left my notebook at home.

3. Hend planned to spend the weekend in Alexandria. (going)

3- Hend is going to spend the weekend in Alexandria.

1."When will you return from Paris,?" (My wife asked)

1- My wife asked me when I would return from Paris.

2. Salwa hasn't done her homework yet . (Salwa`s homework)

2- Salwa's homework hasn't been done yet.

3.After he had studied the lesson, he went out for a walk (..... until)

3- He didn't go out for a walk until he had studied the lesson.

1. I tried the fish at that restaurant, but I regret it.(Shouldn't)

1- I shouldn't have tried the fish at that restaurant.

2. "Where did you buy that shirt?" he said to me. (asked)

2- He asked me where I had bought that shirt.

3. My mother hasn't cleaned my room yet.(been)

3- My room hasn't been cleaned yet.

1. "Open the door." the teacher said. (told)

1- The teacher told me/the student to open the doo

2. We have collected a lot of money for the charity. (been)

2- A lot of money has been collected for the charity by us.

3. Hanan didn't phone me , so I didn't go to the party. (If)

3- If Hanan had phoned me, I would have gone to the party.

1. What's the name of the biggest city of Egypt? (like to know)

1- I'd like to know the name of the biggest city in Egypt.

2. She hasn't cooked lunch yet. (Lunch)

2- Lunch hasn't been cooked yet.

3. I liked the book a lot, so I decided to read it again. (reread)

3- I liked the book a lot, so I decided to reread it.

1. "Where is the bank" I said to Amin. (I asked)

1- I asked Amin where the bank was.

2. I ate fish at the restaurant, but I regret it. (shouldn't)

2- I shouldn't have eaten fish at the restaurant.

3. We visited the museum then we went home. (After)

3- After we had visited the museum, we went home.

1. I liked the book a lot, so I decided to read it again. (reread)

1- I like the book a lot, so I decided to reread it.

2. Perhaps he broke his arm. (might)

2- He might have broken his arm.

3. The doctor said to Hazem: "You must stop smoking." (advised)

3- The doctor advised Hazem to stop smoking.

1. "Don't touch the snake," Mona said to Ola. (warned)

1- Mona warned Ola not to touch the snake.

2. Our school has won the competition. (The competition)

2- The competition has been won by our school.

3. I've already arranged to visit the museum tomorrow. (visiting)

3- I'm visiting the museum tomorrow.

1. Perhaps he broke his arms. (might)

1- He might have broken his arms.

2. I have as much money as I need. (enough)

2- I have enough money.

3. First, I finished my work, then I went to the club. (until)

3- I didn't go to the club until I had finished my work.

1. Amr`s arm hurts. Perhaps he broke it (might)
1- *Amr's arm hurts. He might have broken it.*
2. Do you have as much water as you need? (enough)
2- *Do you have enough water ?*
3. I didn't recognize your cousin so I didn't say hello. (If)
3- *If I had recognised your cousin, I would have said hello.*
- =====

1. I bought an old car but I regret. (shouldn't)
1- *I shouldn't have bought an old car.*
2. Adam has won the first prize. (The first prize)
2- *The first prize has been won by Adam.*
3. "Don't play in the street," Our father said to us. (warned)
3- *Our father warned us not to play in the street.*
- =====

1. I didn't have much money, so I didn't buy that expensive laptop. (If)
1- *If I had had more money, I would have bought that expensive laptop.*
2. "You must stop smoking." the doctor said to Hatem. (advised)
2- *The doctor advised Hatem to stop smoking.*
3. They have planted trees along the river. (been)
3- *Trees have been planted along the river.*
- =====

1. " You must stop smoking," the doctor said to Ali. (advised)
1- *The doctor advised Ali to stop smoking.*
2. It is not possible that you saw Mona yesterday. She is in Paris. (can`t)
2- *You can't have seen Mona yesterday. She is in Paris.*
3. I can`t wait to go to the museum tomorrow. (look forward)
3- *I'm looking forward to going to the museum tomorrow.*
- =====

1. I didn't read all the questions before answering the exam. (should)
1- *I should have read all the questions before answering the exam.*
2. They have planted trees along the river. (been)
2- *Trees have been planted along the river by them.*
3. "Please don't be late, " the teacher said to me. (advised)
3- *The teacher advised me not to be late.*
- =====

1. " Why did you come late , Hossam ? " The teacher said. (asked)
1- *The teacher asked Hossam why he came late.*
2. They played indoor games as the weasather was very bed . (If)
2- *If the weather hadn't been very bad, they wouldn't have played indoor games.*
- =====

/ If the weather hadn't been very bad, they would have played outdoor games.

3. Do you have enough money ?

(much)

3- Do you have as much money as you need ?

① I'm not sure where Shady is. Perhaps he is at home.

{ might }

= Shady might be at home .

② I have mended my car.

{been..... }

= My car has been mended .

③ "You should go to bed early" Adel said to me .

{ advised }

= Adel advised me to go to bed early.

جمل على كل وحده (Unit 10)

1 He has planned to spend the summer holiday in Alexandria. (going to)

Answer  **He is going to spend the summer holiday in Alexandria.**

2 I'm going to build a new house.

(intend)

Answer  **I intend to build a new house.**

3 Everything is arranged for holding our meeting tomorrow.

(we)

Answer  **We are holding our meeting tomorrow.**

4 Hend has just bought a train ticket to travel to Aswan.

(travelling)

Answer  **Hend is travelling to Aswan.**

5 Heba has promised not to tell anyone about what happened.

(won't)

Answer  **Heba won't tell anyone about what happened.**

6 The train from Cairo to Matrouh is at 8 a.m.

(leaves)

Answer  **The train from Cairo to Matrouh leaves at 8 a . m**

7 She has prepared her bag to travel to London.

(going)

Answer  **She is going to travel to London.**

8 Ashraf arranged to build a new house.

(building)

Answer  **Ashraf is building a new house.**

9 I promise to buy you a camera if you get high marks.

(will)

Answer	I will buy you a camera if you get high marks.	
10	The bus to Luxor is at 8 a.m.	(leaves)
Answer	The bus to Luxor leaves at 8 a.m.	
11	They decided to open the new project.	(going to)
Answer	They are going to open the new project.	
12	I've arranged to meet him tomorrow.	(I'm)
Answer	I'm meeting him tomorrow.	
13	I've arranged to visit Alexandria next Friday.	(visiting)
Answer	I'm visiting Alexandria next Friday.	
14	I intend to spend a week in Luxor next winter.	(going)
Answer	I'm going to spend a week in Luxor next winter.	
15	I've just decided to buy a newspaper.	(will)
Answer	I will buy a newspaper.	
16	He's intended to become a scientist.	(going)
Answer	He's going to become a scientist.	
17	Adel arranged to spend the weekend in the village.	(spending)
Answer	Adel is spending the weekend in the village.	
18	Mr said promises to give me a present if I get high marks.	(will)
Answer	Mr said will give me a present if I get high marks.	
19	Mohsen will travel to Rome .Everything is okay.	(is)
Answer	Mohsen is going to travel to Paris	
20	What time is the next train to Aswan?	(leave)
Answer	What does the next train leave?	
21	My plan is to buy a flat in Alexandria.	(am going
Answer	I'm going to buy a flat in Alexandria.	









مستتر / محمد عبد التواب السطوحى
٠١٠٦٧٤٣٤٨٩٥










Unit (11)









- 1 Emad scored a goal. I'm sure he did. (must have)
Answer **Emad must have scored a goal.**
- 2 It was important for him to ask for help. (should have.)
Answer **He should have asked for help.**
- 3 It is possible that Marwa got good marks. (might have)
Answer **Marwa might have got good marks.**
- 4 He must have travelled by plane. (sure)
Answer **I'm sure. He travelled by plane.**
- 5 It was important for us not to take that way. (shouldn't have)
Answer **We shouldn't have taken that way.**
- 6 I ate so much chocolate! I feel sick. (shouldn't have)
Answer **I shouldn't have eaten so much chocolate . I feel sick.**
- 7 I think Tamer was in Alexandria last summer. Look, he is in the photo. (must)
Answer **Tamer must have been in Alexandria last summer.**
- 8 I didn't start saving money years ago. (should)
Answer **I should have started saving money years ago.**
- 9 Your little sister ate a lot of sweets an now feels ill. (shouldn't have.)
Answer **Your little sister shouldn't have eaten a lot of sweets.**
- 10 It's certain that Raghda was ill. (must)
Answer **Raghda must have been ill**
- 11 I think Aya worked out the difficult sum because she is too clever. (must have)
Answer **Aya must have worked the difficult sum.**
- 12 Amr's arm hurts. Perhaps he broke it. (might)
Answer **Amr might have broken his arm.**
- 13 I think my grandfather visited England in1990, but I'm not sure. (might have)
Answer **My grandfather might have visited England in 1990**
- 14 I regret spending much time watching TV. (shouldn't)
Answer **I shouldn't have spendd much time watching TV.**
- 15 Perhaps Amir was at his office. I'm not sure. (might)

Amir might have been at his office



- 16 The streets are wet. It rained a lot yesterday. (must)
Answer  **It must have rained a lot yesterday.**
- 17 Fatma missed the school bus because she got up late. (should have)
Answer  **Fatma should have got up earlier.**
- 18 I'm sure that she was tired yesterday. (must have)
Answer  **she must have been tired yesterday**
- 19 It wasn't a good idea to leave someone smoke without advising him.(shouldn't)
Answer  **I shouldn't have left him smoke without advising him.**
- 20 It's not possible that you saw Manal yesterday. She is in England. (can't)
Answer  **You can't have seen Manal yesterday.**
- 21 Ali didn't go to school on time. It's possible he missed the bus. (might)
Answer  **Ali might have missed the bus.**

Unit (12)

- 1 "Turn off your phones" The professor said to the students . (ordered)
Answer  **The professor ordered the students to turn off their phones.**
- 2 " Don't waste your time on your laptop." said my father (not to)
Answer  **My father told me not to waste my time on my laptop.**
- 3 The doctor said to the patient. " Take this medicine regularly. " (advised)
Answer  **The doctor advised the patient to take that medicine regularly.**
- 4 My uncle said , " I will come again next week." (that)
Answer  **My uncle said that he would come again the following week.**
- 5 " I can swim in this canal." Heba said to me (told)
Answer  **Heba told me that she could swim in that canal.**
- 6 "Don't leave the door open, Abeer." father said. (Father warned)
Answer  **Father warned Abeer not to leave the door open.**
- 7 "I'm tired and I want to sleep. " (Amir said)
Answer  **Amir said that he was tired and he wanted to sleep.**
- 8 Omar said , " I'd like you to come to the wedding party. " (invited)
Answer  **Omar invited me to come to the wedding party.**
- 9 Nora said to Nahed" I'm reading a book now." (told)

- Answer**  **Nora told her sister that she was reading a book then.**
- 10 "Don't sit on that wall." The tour guide said to Maha. (warned)
- Answer**  **The tour guide warned Maha not to sit on that wall.**
- 11 "Run faster" I said to my friend in the race." (encouraged)
- Answer**  **I encouraged my friend to run fast in the race.**
- 12 "I watched the match yesterday." Ramy said to Magdy. (told)
- Answer**  **Ramy told Magdy that he had watched the match the day before.**
- 13 "Don't touch the snake ." Nawal said to Ola (warned)
- Answer**  **Nawal warned me not to touch the snake.**
- 14 "Don't stand up." The teacher said to Ali. (ordered)
- Answer**  **The teacher ordered the class to stand up.**
- 15 "The Sun is a star." Our teacher said. (that)
- Answer**  **The teacher said that the sun is a star.**
- 16 "I come from England." (The tourist told me)
- Answer**  **The tourist told me that he came from England.**
- 17 "Go on! You can swim across the pool." Adel's father said to him.(encouraged)
- Answer**  **Adel's friend encouraged him to swim across the pool.**
- 18 Mum said "please, do your homework, Sally." (asked)
- Answer**  **Mum asked Sally to do her homework.**
- 19 "Don't leave your bag here." Mohammed said to Rahma. (warned)
- Answer**  **Mohammed warned Rahma not to leave her bag there.**
- 20 "Please lend me your dictionary ,Wael." said Soha . (asked)
- Answer**  **Soha asked Wael to lend her his dictionary.**
- 21 "I'm learning how to swim" (Tarek said)
- Answer**  **Tarek said that he was learning to swim.**

Unit (13)

- 1 Mother said to me , " Will you travel to Aswan by air." (wondered)
- Answer**  **Mother wondered if I would travel to Aswan by air.**
- 2 Sonia said " When is the next bus leaving?" (asked)
- Answer**  **Sonia asked When the next bus was leaving**
- 3 "What your father do, Aya?" Mona asked
Mona asked Aya what her father did

- 4 " Do you have dinner before you sleep, Maher?" (Father asked)
Answer  **Father asked Maher if he had dinner before he slept.**
- 5 The officer said, " Where did the accident happen?" (wanted to know)
Answer  **The officer wanted to know where the accident had happened.**
- 6 " Do you like the Egyptian food?" the guide said to the tourist. (asked)
Answer  **The guide asked the tourist if he liked the Egyptian food.**
- 7 " Why do you smoke, Adel?" (The doctor asked)
Answer  **The doctor asked Adel why he smoked.**
- 8 " Can you play the guitar ?" Nabila asked Mona (if)
Answer  **Nabila asked Mona if she could play the guitar.**
- 9 Adel said to Hassan , " Will you watch the match tonight? " (whether)
Answer  **Adel asked Hassan if he would watch the match that night.**
- 10 "What is the fastest way to Capital Bank? (I asked)
Answer  **I asked what fastest way to Capital Bank was.**
- 11 Mohammed said to Sara , " Will you help me with my homework?" (if)
Answer  **Mohamed asked Sara if she would help him with his homework.**
- 12 Rana said, " Where is the post office?" wanted to know
Answer  **Rana wanted to know Where the post office was.**
- 13 " When will the sleeper train arrive in Aswan?" (One of the tourists asked)
Answer  **One of the tourists asked when the sleeper train would arrive in Aswan.**
- 14 "Will it rain tomorrow, Ahmed" asked Adel (Adel asked)
Answer  **Adel asked Ahmed if it would rain tomorrow.**
- 15 " When will you return from London?" (My friend asked.....)
Answer  **My friend asked me when I would return from London.**
- 16 Rana said to Nahla , " which school subject do you like most?"(Rana asked)
Answer  **Rana asked Nahla which school subject she liked most.**
- 17 The teacher asked me why I had arrived late. (The teacher said to me ...)
Answer  **The teacher said to me " Why did you arrive late?"**
- 18 " Why do tourists like the Red Sea ?" said the TV reporter . (The TV reporter asked..
Answer  **The TV reporter asked me Why tourists liked the Red Sea**
- 19 " Can I get a return ticket?" Ramy said (whether)
Answer  **Ramy asked whether he could get a return ticket.**
- 20 " Can you answer the difficult question, Nabil?" our teacher said (our teacher asked?)
Answer  **Our teacher asked Nabil if he could answer the difficult question.**
- 21 "Where are you going in the summer holiday?" Amal asked (Amal asked her sister
Answer  **Amal asked her sister where she was going in the summer holiday.**
- 21 "Did Aya watch the film at the cinema yesterday?" (Manal asked her friend)
Answer  **Manal asked her friend if Aya had watched the film at the cinema the day before.**

- 1 Heba has written a letter to Dina. (A letter)
Answer  **A letter has been written to Dina by Heba.**
- 2 They have done all the housework. (been)
Answer  **All the housework has been done.**
- 3 Tamer has just painted the room. (has been)
Answer  **The room has been just painted.**
- 4 She has done all the jobs. (been)
Answer  **All the jobs have been done.**
- 5 Nada hasn't cleaned the floor yet. (The floor)
Answer  **The floor hasn't been cleaned yet by Nada.**
- 6 The earthquake has damaged some buildings. (have)
Answer  **some buildings have been damaged by the earthquake.**
- 7 Have they planted any trees in the park yet? (been)
Answer  **Have any trees been planted in the park yet?**
- 8 Rasha has not sent the emails yet. (The emails)
Answer  **The emails have not been sent yet by Rasha.**
- 9 Egypt has won the international competition. (has been)
Answer  **The international competition has been won by Egypt.**
- 10 He has already done the housework. (The housework)
Answer  **The housework has been done by him.**
- 11 Has Noha just washed the dishes? (Have)
Answer  **Have the dishes been washed by Noha?**
- 12 Marwa hasn't written the lesson yet. (been)
Answer  **The lessons haven't been written by Mara.**
- 13 Prizes have been given to many students by the head teacher.(The head teacher)
Answer  **The head teacher has given prizes to many students.**
- 14 What have they have called the new baby? (has)
Answer  **What has the new baby been called?**
- 15 Someone has written notes in my diary. (Notes)
Answer  **Notes have been written in my diary.**
- 16 A fifteen – year-old boy has won the prize. (The prize)
Answer  **The prize has been won by a fifteen-year-old.**
- 17 My mother hasn't washed the dishes yet. (The dishes.....)
Answer  **The dishes haven't been washed yet.**
- 18 Plans have been made by the teacher for the next class trip. (The teacher....)
Answer  **The teacher has made plans for the next class trip.**
- 19 Archeologists have found an ancient building in the desert. (An ancient building)
Answer  **An ancient building has been found in the desert by archeologists.**
- 20 We have collected a lot of money for the charity. (A lot of money)
Answer  **A lot of money has been collected for the charity by us.**
- 21 He read the sentence incorrectly. (misread)
Answer  **He misread he sentence.**
- 21 They have planted trees along the river. (Trees)
Answer  **Trees have been planted along the river.**

Unit (15)

- 1 You should help your brother. (if)
Answer **If I were you , I'd help my brother.**
- 2 Without his help, I'd fail. (unless)
Answer **Unless he helped me , I'd fail.**
- 3 They lose the match because they don't play well. (if)
Answer **If they played well , they wouldn't lose the match.**
- 4 If Manal didn't see a snake, she wouldn't run fast. (unless)
Answer **Unless Manal saw a snake, she wouldn't run fast.**
- 5 He can't buy the car because it is expensive. (if)
Answer **If the car isn't expensive, he can buy it.**
- 6 You should work hard. (if I were)
Answer **If I were you, I'd work hard.**
- 7 If he didn't take care, he'd have an accident. (unless)
Answer **Unless he took care, he would have an accident.**
- 8 Don't give your password to anybody , or you may lose all your money. (If)
Answer **If you give your password to anybody, you may lose all your money.**
- 9 The museum is closed today. We can't go there. (Unless)
Answer **Unless the museum was closed today, we couldn't go there.**
- 10 I advise you to study hard. (If)
Answer **If I were you, I'd study hard.**
- 11 He can't play basketball because he isn't tall. (If)
Answer **If he was tall, he could play basketball.**
- 12 You should see a doctor. (if)
Answer **If I were you , I'd see a doctor.**
- 13 Omar doesn't study for the exam, so he fails. (If)
Answer **If Omar studied for the exam, he wouldn't fail.**
- 14 What would you be able to do if you travelled to England? (could)
Answer **What could you do if you travelled to England?**
- 15 Ahmed would probably get a prize if the scientist saw his invention . (might)
Answer **Ahmed might get a prize if the scientist saw his invention**
- 16 Mustafa would be able to run quickly if he exercised every day. (could)
Answer **Mustafa could run quickly if he exercised every day.**
- 17 Mona doesn't have a smartphone. She can't transfer money to her sister. (If)
Answer **Mona could transfer money to her sister if she had a smartphone.**
- 18 Adel can't go to the party as he doesn't have free time. (If)
Answer **If Adel had free time, he could go to the party.**
- 19 If I were rich, I'd buy that car. (poor)
Answer **If I weren't poor, I'd buy that car.**
- 20 Perhaps if Omar knew the answer, he would pass the test. (might)
Answer **if Omar knew the answer, he might pass the test.**
- 21 Rahma didn't play tennis well. She doesn't get a medal. (If)
Answer **Rahma would get a medal if she played tennis.**
- 21 You won't meet the manager because he is a broad. (If)
Answer **You would meet the manger if he wasn't a broad.**
- 22 Esraa is ill because she eats junk food. (If)
Answer **If Esraa didn't eat junk food , she wouldn't be ill.**
- 23 I'm too poor to buy that book. (If)
Answer **If I wasn't poor , I'd buy that book.**

- 1 After Hala had bought a pair of shoes, she went back home. (before)
Answer **Hala had bought a pair of shoes before she went back home.**
- 2 First , I booked a ticket. Then , I prepared my bags. (After)
Answer **After I had booked a ticket , I prepared my bags**
- 3 When the man arrived at the station , the train had left. (by the time)
Answer **The train had left by the time man arrived at the station.**
- 4 The boy saw his brother. He ran away. (as soon as)
Answer **The boy ran away as soon as he had seen his brother.**
- 5 He was happy. His father gave him some sweets. (because)
Answer **He was happy because his father gave him some sweets.**
- 6 After chasing the thief, the police arrested him. (had)
Answer **After the police had chased the thief , they arrested him.**
- 7 Before he played the game , he had trained hard. (had)
Answer **He didn't play the game until he had trained hard.**
- 8 Before lunch, Hala had visited her friend. (After)
Answer **After Hala had visited her friend , she had lunch.**
- 9 Heba was happy. She succeeded last week. (because)
Answer **Heba was happy because she had succeeded last week.**
- 10 First, Maher wrote the letter. Then, he posted it. (Before)
Answer **Before posting the letter, Maher wrote it.**
- m Salma didn't watch TV until she had washed the dishes. (After)
Answer **After Salma had washed the dishes, she watched TV.**
- 12 Being happy, he bought his wife a present. (Because)
Answer **He bought his wife a present because he had been happy.**
- 13 First, I got dressed, then I left for school. (By the time)
Answer **By the time I left for school , I had got dressed.**
- 14 first , I played football. Then, I went to bed (After)
Answer **After I had played football, I went to bed.**
- 15 Rana cooked food. Then , she watched the play. (until)
Answer **Rana didn't watch the play until she had cooked food.**
- 16 After getting dressed , Mohammed went to school. (before)
Answer **Mohammed had got dressed before he went to school.**
- 17 After I had changed my clothes, I went to the party. (Before)
Answer **Before I went to the party , I had changed my clothes.**
- 18 First he finished his meal, then he telephoned his father. (After)
Answer **After he had finished his meal, he telephoned his father.**
- 19 By the time we arrived, the bus had left. (As soon as)
Answer **As soon as the bus had left , we arrived.**
- 20 The guests left the house after enjoying themselves. (Before)
Answer **The guests had enjoyed themselves before they left the house.**
- 21 By the time I sent Ali an email, I had found his email address. (until)
Answer **I didn't send Ali an email until I had found his email address.**
- 22 First I revised the lesson. Then I did the exercise. (As soon as)
As soon as I had revised the lesson, I did the exercise.

Unit (17)

1 She was rich , so she bought an expensive car. (If)

Answer **She would have bought an expensive car if she had been rich.**

2 If he hadn't broken the window , his mother wouldn't have been angry. (so)

Answer **He broke the window so his mother was angry.**

3 I forgot my library card, I couldn't borrow a book. (if)

Answer **If I had forgotten my library card, I couldn't have borrowed a book.**

4 My father drove me to school. I wasn't late. (if)

Answer **If my father had driven me to school, I wouldn't have been late.**

5 Sami didn't play basketball because he forgot to bring the ball. (If)

Answer **If Sami had forgotten to bring the ball, he wouldn't have played basketball.**

6 You passed the exam because you studied harder. (if)

Answer **If you had studied harder, you would have passed the exam.**

7 I was ill , so I didn't go to school. (if)

Answer **If I hadn't been ill, I would have gone to school.**

8 I was tired. I didn't watch the documentary about dinosaurs. (If)

Answer **If I hadn't been tired , I would have watched the documentary about dinosaurs**

9 Ayman lost the match because he didn't play well. (If)

Answer **If Ayman had played well, he wouldn't have lost the match.**

10 She studied hard. She got high marks. (If)

Answer **If she had studied hard, she would have got high marks.**

11 I was busy. I didn't watch the film about animals. (If)

Answer **If I hadn't been busy, I would have watched the film about animals.**

12 I didn't recognise your cousin, so I didn't say hello. (If)

Answer **If I had recognized your cousin, I 'd have said hello.**

13 I didn't go to work because I was ill. (if)

Answer **If I hadn't been ill, I would have gone to school.**

14 If he had studied hard , he would have succeeded. (because)

Answer **He didn't succeed because he didn't study hard.**

15 He didn't buy the computer because he didn't have enough money. (If)

Answer **If he had had enough money, he would have bought the computer.**

16 Salah didn't move, so the snake didn't attack him. (If)

Answer **If salah had moved , the snake would have attacked him.**

17 We caught the bus because we ran fast. (If)

Answer **If we hadn't run fast , we wouldn't have caught the bus.**

18 I was too busy to visit my aunt yesterday. (If)

Answer **If I hadn't been busy, I'd have visited my aunt yesterday.**

19 His carelessness made him fail. (unless)

Answer **He 'd have passed unless he had been careless.**

20 I didn't go to the store as it closed at 6 pm. (If)

Answer **I would have gone to the store if it hadn't closed at 6 pm.**

21 He couldn't buy a car as he was very poor. (If)

Answer **If he hadn't been poor, he would have bought the car.**

22 I got bad marks because I didn't listen to my teacher's advice. (If)

Answer **If I had listened to my teacher's advice, I wouldn't have got bad marks.**

Unit (18)

1 The sun is too hot so I can't go to the beach. (If)

Answer **If the sun wasn't too hot , I could go to the beach.**

2 Tourists don't know about Ras Mohammed , so they don't visit it.(If)

Answer **If tourists knew about Ras Mohammed , they would visit it**

3 I want to see that film in the cinema but I don't have time. (If)

Answer **If I had time, I'd see that film in the cinema.**

4 This mobile is too expensive for me to buy. (If)

Answer **If the mobile wasn't expensive, I'd buy it.**

5 Omar didn't get the full mark because he didn't study well. (If)

Answer **If Omar had studied well, he would have got the full marks.**

6 Revise your lessons well to get high marks. (If)

Answer **If you don't revise well, you won't get high marks.**

7 Wear your jacket or you will get cold. (If)

Answer **If you don't wear your jacket , you will be cold.**

8 I'm not sure where Tarek is. Perhaps he's in the park. (might)

Answer **I'm not sure where Tarek is. He might be in the park.**

9 I didn't recognise your cousin , so I didn't say hello. (If)

Answer **If I had recognized your cousin, I would have said hello.**

10 If I see Sayed , perhaps I'll ask him to help me with my homework. (may)

Answer **If I see Sayed , perhaps mayask him to help me with my homework.**

m I can't wait to go to the museum tomorrow. (look forward)

Answer **I look forward to going to the museum.**

12 I was ill, so I didn't go to work. (if)

Answer **If I hadn't been ill, I would have gone to work.**

13 Perhaps Mohamed would pay for your dictionary if he lost it. (might)

Answer **Mohamed might pay for the dictionary if he lost it.**

14 The moon was full yesterday, so I could see at night. (If)

Answer **If the moon hadn't been full yesterday, I couldn't have seen at night.**

15 I saw the stingray when I dived to the bottom of the sea. (if)

Answer **I wouldn't have seen the stingray if I hadn't dived to the bottom of the sea.**

16 Do you have as much water as you need? (enough)

Answer **Do you have enough water?**

17 Do your homework , or the teacher will be angry with you. (If)

Answer **If you don't do your homework , the teacher will be angry with you.**

مع خالص تحياتى

الى ابنائى وبناتى : هذه ثمرة مجهودى ارجوا من الله عز وجل ان تنفعكم

هذه المذكرة فى سؤال اعد الكتابة ريرايت وقد وفقت فى اعداد

حوالى ٢٥٨ تشمل كل اجزاء المنهج

محمد عبد التواب السطوحى

سؤال الجغرافيا أو الايميل

An animal you like

The camel is the animal that I like most. It is called the ship of desert. It is very patient

You can depend on the camel in long distances in the desert. It can store too much water in its body for long time, so it can walk for many days without drinking water. The camel walks at 40 kilometers per hour. It's a very useful animal. People in deserts can't do without it. the camel can carry heavy things. The Arabs, in the past, depended mainly on camels to move from one place to another .

The solar system

*There are eight planets in our solar system . They are all different sizes **Jupiter** is the biggest one . **Mercury** is the closest to the sun . **Neptune** is the farthest one . Three of these planets are smaller than the earth . Only two planets in the solar system don't have any moons. Living on other planets is impossible for many reasons. There is no water or oxygen on other planets. The Earth has a special colour in space. The Earth has only one moon. All the eight planets go around the sun.*

Travelling for work

A lot of people travel for their work. Some people use public transport. Others prefer using their private cars. They are fast and comfortable. Most people use public transport because they are cheap. Some prefer trains. They think they are safe and comfortable. Others use buses. They don't have to book tickets before they get on them. Now many people prefer to use the underground. It's very fast and goes away from the problems of traffic and pollution. It's also cheaper than other means of transport. Means of transport have made our life easier and more comfortable. We can't do without them.

Sea life

If you dive in the Red Sea, you will enjoy sea life. There are many kinds of fish that you can't see anywhere in the world. If you alive to the bottom, you will probably see a stingray. Large animals also live in the Red Sea. Green turtles are too long and live for 23 years or more you can see them walk slowly on the beach. If you go to shark Reef at the right time of year, you might see a shark. You can see dolphins. They are fun to swim with. Tourists like going there to dive or snorkel and enjoy seeing sea life. They can take photos there with special cameras.

To : John55 @ gmail.com

From : tom66 @ yahoo.com

About : Social networking sites

Dear John,

I'm happy to send you this email. I'd like to tell you about social networking sites. They have become very important. Most people use them to make friends. Also, they use them to send messages to a lot of people at the same time. In addition, these sites help in exchanging ideas between different groups of people. These sites are very useful. However, we shouldn't become addicted to them. A lot of jobs today can't be done without Using social networking sites. It saves time and effort greatly. Mot young people prefer Using social networking sites in their work.

Yours, Tom

To : Alaa

From : Samy

About : The Bibliotheca Alexandria

Dear Alaa,

I'm happy to write you this email. I'd like to tell you about my visit to Alexandria. Yesterday, I visited Alexandria with family. My father drove us to Alexandria in the morning. We went to the beach and we enjoyed swimming in the sea. We also visited Bibliotheca Alexandria. I want to tell you something about it. It was designed by a group of international architects .It is a modern wonder. It's full of light from the sun during the day. It contains a huge number of old new books. A lot of people visit it every day .I think it is fantastic

Yours, Samy

To : Ali

From : Faris

About : My favourite animal

Dear Ali,

I'm happy to send you this email. I'd like to tell you about my favourite animal the horse is the animal that I like most. Horses have been friends to men for many years. It is very strong. It is very patient. It can carry heavy things on its body for a long time, so it can work for many days without tiring .The horse walks for a long distance per hour. It's a very useful animal. People in deserts can't do without it.

The horse is a wonderful animal. Horses are expensive. They need special equipment and health care. They are also used for sport. We should treat horses kindly because they are not machines.

Yours

Faris

To : Ali

From : Faris

About : A new wonder of the world

Dear Ali,

I'm happy to send you this email. I'd like to tell you about one of new wonders of the world. It's the TajMahal. It's a white marble monument. It was built by the ruler of India in 1632. It has a beautiful dome and four minarets. It has been visited by millions of people. Taj Mahal has now been added to UNESCO`s list of protected monuments UNESCO helps to look after important sites and it is hoped that it will preserve the Taj Mahal . I hope I will visit it one day.

Yours, Faris

To : ahmed1986@yahoo.com

From :al stohy@hotmail.com

Subject : A trip to Fayoum

Hi Ahmed ,

How are you and how is your family? I miss you very much. It wsa a pleasure to receive your email yesterday. My school has arranged a trip next week. I want to tell you about our school trip. We are travelling to Fayoum. It`s the first time I go there .The trip programme is very nice .We are visiting a lot

of places. We`ll have lunch beside Karoun Lake. We`re visiting the famous waterwheels. We are travelling by coach. It takes two hours to get there. I`ll be happy if you come with me. We`ll have fun there.

Yous

Al Stohy

Smoking

Smoking is a bad habit. It makes you feel ill. People who smoke can` t run or breathe well. Also, they can` t do many jobs. Smoking affects your health and people around you badly. We should help young people stop smoking and practice some sports instead. Smoking isn` t allowed in public places. You might find that your friends or people that you know, will try to persuade you to try cigarettes or other things, don` t be afraid to say no to them. Smoking is very dangerous. It damages your lungs. It makes your fingers and teeth yellow. You should help yourself to stop it.

My favourite means of trasnsport

Many people prefer travelling by train. Travelling by train is enjoyable. It`s fun seeing the scenery when you travel. You must buy tickets before you get on train. You can use a rail card. It`s cheaper than buying tickets. You should be early at your railway station to get into your right train. The express train is much better than the stopping train. It is fast and has air conditioning .It doesn't stop at all station. It stops at the main stations only. You can find a comfortable seat to sit in. You can book a ticket on a non-smoking carriage. It has sleeping carriages and a restaurant carriage. It`s great fun travelling by train

The importance of technical school

Technical school are very important for the future of any country . People all over the world give great attention to this kind of education. Student in these schools are different from others. They learn how to use technology and study it at the same time. They study different fields. Students who do very well at technical schools can continue the same study at universities. They can get good jobs. All technical jobs are very important in our life. I think technical schools are the future of industry in Egypt. Parents should encourage their sons and daughters to join technical schools to find jobs easily in the future.

An animal that you like

The animal I like most is horse. It is a beautiful animal. It is not lazy. It works hard. It runs fast. It was used for transport in the past. The horse is a wonderful animal. Horses are expensive. They need special equipment and health care. Horses have been friends to man for thousands of years. They used to carry things pull carriages and work on farms. They are also used for sport. We should treat horses kindly because they are not machines. We should look after them because they are so useful.

Modern Technology

Modern technology has become a must in our life. The latest technology can help you to do many things. We can't do without it/ It helps to increase the speed of everything. Nowadays, modern technology helps us to increase many products in all fields. Modern technology is non-stop. Every day there are new things. We should do our best to learn these new skills to catch up with it. Most young people are skilful in using modern technology. We should encourage them to do well. We no longer need more workers to achiveve many things. It has mad the world a small village. Using modern technology helps you make use of the experience of others .

The coral المرجان in the Red sea

The Red Sea is one of the warmest sea in the world. For this reason, hundreds of fish and animals live there. A lot of tourists go to Ras Mohamed every year. They go there to enjoy seeing sea life They enjoy snorkeling with special equipment They enjoy seeing the coral reefs . The coral is very beautiful. The colours are beautiful and the coral is of different size. The groups coral look like plants. We should protect our coral. Now, we don't have as much coral as we should protect our coral. Now, we don't have as much coral as we had in the past. If the coral disappears, more sea life might also disappears . So we must care much about the beauty of nature in the Red Sea

A journey by train

To ; Basma @gmail.com

From ;Ahmed@gmail.com

About : A train journey

Hi Ahmed,

I'm happy to write this email to you. I want to tell you about my journey to Aswan. Now, I'm at Cairo Station with my uncle. We are taking a sleeper train to Aswan. The train leaves at six O'clock. There are a lot of people who are waiting too, so the train is going to be busy. Travelling by train is a great way to see the scenery of a country. The beds are comfortable. We are eating in the restaurant carriage this evening. The train stops at Luxor early tomorrow morning on its way to Aswan. My uncle is going there on a business trip. He asked me to enjoy the weather there. It's warm in winter .

Yours,

Ahmed



مع أطيب التمنيات
محمد عبد التواب السطوحى

Dialogues

Finish the following dialogue:

1-A man is buying a ticket at a train station.

- Man** : Good morning. (1)... **Can I book a ticket to Luxor, please??**
Assistant: To Luxor ? Of course. (2) **Would you like a single or a return...?**
Man : A return, please . I'm coming back on Tuesday.
Assistant: That's LE100. The next train leaves in 30 minutes.
Man : ..(3)... **Could you tell me which platform the train leaves from?)**
Assistant: The train leaves from platform 2.
Man : ..(4)..... **Thank you very much.....**

2-Nevine and Lamia are at the ticket office of a museum

- Assistant** : Unfortunately, the museum is closed today
Lamia : Oh no.(1) ... **What a pity ...!** I didn't know that
Assistant : Didn't you look at the website? It has all the times there
Lamia : I'll look next time. (2) ... **When are you open ...?**
Assistant : You can come on any other day, but I don't recommend Saturday.
Lamia : (3) **Why shouldn't we visit on Saturday ...?**
Assistant : Because it's difficult to see things because there are so many people.
Lamia : (4) **Perhaps we can come tomorrow..... ?**

3-Some students are asking a scientist about space.

- Noha** : (1)**Do you think you could tell me how fast the earth turns?**
Scientist : Yes, of course. The earth turns at about 1,670 km an hour
Ola : (2).. **Do all planets have moons....?**
Scientist : No, but most of them do have moons.
Noha : What did you ask the scientist, Ola?
Ola : (3) ... **I asked the scientist if all planets had moons....**
Maya : There are many things that nobody knows about space. Do you agree?
Scientist : (4)... **I couldn't agree with you more...** . However, we are trying to learn more.

4-A basketball player is visiting a school

- Teacher** : Today, a famous basketball player is visiting our school. This is Captain Tarek (1) **Could you answer some of the students' questions?**
Captain Tarek : Of course. What questions would the students like to ask?
Ali : My friends say that I will never be good at basketball because I'm not very tall. Is that right?

Captain Tarek : (2) **I' m afraid I disagree** You don't have to be tall. When I started playing, I was one of the smallest boys in the class!

Basel : (3) **What happened after that ?**.

Captain Tarek : I became the best basketball player in the class because I always trained hard.

Basel : Do you think one day I might be as good as you?

CaptainTarek : (4).....**You might be**

5-Amal and Lamia are talking about a man's journey along the Nile

Amal: In the news, it says that a man has walked all the way along the Nile

Lamia: Yes, I heard about this. It's unusual! (1)....**Why did he do it ?**

Amal: He did it because he wanted to see if it was possible.

Lamia: I heard that at the beginning of the journey, he was very ill, but (2) **he got better**.

Amal: That's good. (3)....**Is he going to write about his journey himself ?**

Lamia: Yes, he said he would. It will probably be very interesting journal to read.

Amal:. 4..... **I couldn't agree with you more**

Walid : Thank you.

6-Fawzy and Mazin are speaking about a dangerous hobby.

Fawzy : Look at this photograph in the magazine: A man is standing on top of a very tall building.

Mazin : Really?(1)....**Why is he doing that?**

Fawzy : The magazine says it's his hobby.

Mazin : (2)....**He shouldn't do that/be there. It's dangerous**

Fawzy : I couldn't agree with you more. The police should stop him.

Mazin : (3) **What else does it say ?**

Fawzy : It also says that the police arrested him.

Mazin : (4) **Oh dear**.

7-Samy and his father are talking about computers and smartphones.

Samy : Would you buy me a computer. Dad ?

Father : Of course. (1) **Why do you need it?**

Samy : I need it to do some work on the internet.

Father : Do you know how to use the internet ?

Samy : (2) ...**Yes, I do**.....We use computers at school.

Father : (3) **What do you think of a smartphone?**

Samy : Great. I think a smartphone is more useful than a computer.

Father : Ok. Tomorrow, (4) **I 'll buy you a smartphone**.

8-Omar and Khaled are talking about sports.

Khaled : What's your favourite sport, Omar?

Omar : My favourite sport is football.

Khaled : ..(1)....**How often do you play it?**

Omar : I play it twice a week, in the club near our house.

Khaled : Why do you prefer it?

Omar : ..(2)...**Because it makes me fit.**

Khaled : ..(3)... **Do you like tennis?**

Omar : No, I don't like tennis. What about you?

Khaled : ..(4)...**I like it very much....**

9- A man is buying a ticket at a train station

Man : Good morning. Can I book a ticket to Aswan, please?

Assistant : Sure.(1) ... **Would you like a single or a return...?**...

Man : Return, please. What time is the next train?

Assistant : (2) ... **It leaves at 10 o'clock.....** .

Man : I should hurry then. (3) ...**How much is that.. ?**

Assistant : It's LE 100.

Man : Which platform does the train leave from?

Assistant : (4) **Platform 3..** . It will leave in thirty minutes.

10- Huda and Salma are talking about Salma's new mobile.

Huda : Is this mobile new?

Salma : ...(1)...**Yes, it is.**

Huda : Who bought it for you?

Salma : ...(2)...**My father bought it.**

Huda : Your father! ...(3)...**Why ... ?**

Salma : Because I have passed my final exams.

Huda : ...(4)...**When did he buy it.....?**

Salma : He bought it last week.

11- Amgad meets his friend Amr at Cairo railway station

Amgad : Where **are** you going, Amr?

Amr : (1) ...**I'm going to Luxor**.....

Amgad : **Luxor!** me too (2)...**Have you booked a ticket.....?**

Amr : Yes. I have booked a **first** class one.

Amgad : (3) ..**How much is that.....?**

Amr : 200 hundred pounds.

Amgad : Have a nice journey.

Amr : (4) **Thank you**

12- Sameh is buying a T-shirt at a clothes shop.

Sameh : Good evening.

Assistant : Good evening. Can I help you?

Sameh : Please, I want (1)...**to buy a t.shirt**.....

Assistant : Look at this T-shirt. (2)...**Do you like it.....?**

Sameh : Yes, I like it. What is it made of?
 Assistant : (3)**It is made of fine cotton**.....
 Sameh : Fine cotton! (4) **How much is it**.....?
 Assistant : For only 200 pounds.
 Sameh : Here's the money. Bye

13- Mostafa is telephoning the Palace Hotel to book a room.

Receptionist : Good morning, Palace Hotel. Can I help you?
 Mostafa : ..(1).....**Yes, I want to book a room**.....
 Receptionist : Do you want a single or a double room?
 Mostafa : ..(2).....**A single please**.....
 Receptionist : ..(3)....**How long will you stay** ..?
 Mostafa : I'll stay for three days.
 Receptionist : ..(4).....**What's your name**....?
 Mostafa : Mostafa Abd El-Salam.

14- Between the teacher and Ahmed who lost his bag

Teacher : What are you doing, Ahmed?
 Ahmed :(1).....**I'm looking for my lost bag**.....
 Teacher : When did you lose it?
 Ahmed :(2).....**about ten minutes** ago.
 Teacher :(3).....**Where did you lose it**.....?
 Ahmed : At the playground.
 Teacher :(4)....**What were in the bag**.....?
 Ahmed : My school books, notebooks, a pencil case and ten pounds.
 Teacher : Ok, Ahmed. I'll tell you when it is found.

15-Mr. Ahmed and Mr. Tamer are talking about an advertisement on the internet.

Mr. Ahmed : Have you read the advertisement on the internet today?
 Mr. Tamer :(1)....**No, I haven't** What is it about?
 Mr. Ahmed :(2).....**It is about a bank manager job**.....
 Mr. Tamer : A bank manager! It sounds a very interesting job.
 Mr. Ahmed :(3).....**Do you want to get it**?
 Mr. Tamer : Yes, I want to get it.
 Mr. Ahmed :(4).....**What skills do they ask for**.....?
 Mr. Tamer : The skill of using the computer and speaking English.
 Mr. Ahmed : Well, I hope you will achieve your goal.
 Mr. Tamer : Thank you.

16- Alaa and Sarah are talking outside the exam room.

Alaa : Good morning, Sarah.
 Sarah : Good morning, Alaa. ..(1)....**What do you think of the exam**..... ?
 Alaa : I think it was easy. I did quite well. ..(2) ...**What about you**

Sarah : I did well, too.
 Alaa : What do you think of the first question?
 Sarah : It was a bit difficult, but...(3).....**I could answer it**.....
 Alaa : Great.(4).....**I hope you will get the full mark**.....
 Sarah : Thank you, Alaa.

17 -Salma and Malak passed the final exam.

Salma : Have you seen the results of the exam?
 Malak : Yes, ..(1)....**I passed** What about you?
 Salma : I passed, too and got high marks.
 Malak : Congratulations!(2)....**Did you tell your parents**..... ?
 Salma : Of course and they were delighted.
 Malak : ...(3).....**What will you do after that**.....?
 Salma : In fact, I've decided to join university. What about you?
 Malak : ..(4).....**I have decided to join it, too**.....

18-Sami and Hani are talking about spending the mid-year holiday.

Sami : Hi. Where will you spend the mid-year holiday?
 Hani :(1)**I will go to Aswan**.....
 Sami : Well, the weather is fine in Aswan. Who will you go with?
 Hani :(2)**My family will go with me**.....
 Sami :(3)**Where will you stay**.....?
 Hani : We will stay at my uncle's house.
 Sami :(4) ...**How long will you stay**.....?
 Hani : We will stay about seven days.
 Sami : Have a nice trip.

19-Amr is at a shop that sells cameras. He wants to buy one

Assistant : Can I help you?
 Amr :(1).....**I want to buy a camera**.....
 Assistant : We have good cameras. This one is very good.
 Amr :(2).....**How much is it**..... ?
 Assistant : It's only 2500 pounds.
 Amr : Oh, it's very expensive.(3)....**Have you got a cheaper one**.....?
 Assistant : That one isn't expensive. It's 1350 pounds.
 Amr :(4).....**O.K. thank you**.....
 Assistant : You are welcome.

Situations

Can I book a single / return (ticket to Alexandria), please?	
Would you like first or second class?	I'd like the first class.
Would you like a single or a return ticket?	A return , please.
How long does (the express train) take?	It takes two hours .
How much is that, please?	It's twenty six pounds.
What time is the next train?	It is at 3 o'clock.
Could you tell me which platform the train leaves from?	
It leaves from platform 3	

1- You are taking a bus from Cairo to Alexandria. You want to know how long you will spend on the bus.

How long does the bus take?

2- You want to book a ticket for the train from Cairo to Luxor. You are coming back on Thursday.

Can I book a return ticket to Luxor, please?

3- You want to book a ticket for the train from Cairo to Luxor.

Can I book a ticket from Cairo to Luxor, please?

4- You want to book a return ticket to Aswan.

Can I book a return ticket to Aswan, please?

5. You ask about the price of a second class train ticket to Aswan.

How much is that, please?

6- You ask how much a return ticket to Cairo costs.

How much is a return ticket to Cairo, please?

7. You ask about the time of the Aswan's train.

What time is the Aswan train?

8. You want to know which platform the train leaves from.

Could you tell me which platform the train leaves from?

9. You are at Cairo metro station You ask a policeman how long the metro takes to Helwan.

Could you tell me how long the metro takes to Helwan?

I think you should have + P.P	التصريف الثالث	توصيات في الماضي
-------------------------------	----------------	------------------

You shouldn't have + P.P	التصريف الثالث
--------------------------	----------------

I really didn't want to + المصدر	المصدر	شرح اختيار في الماضي
----------------------------------	--------	----------------------

I wasn't interested , thanks.
I really shouldn't have + P.P التصريف الثالث because ... التعبير عن الندم
I really think that you should try this. Why don't you play this (computer game)?Go on! You'll enjoy it! اقناع الناس بعمل شيء
Refusing
No thanks, I really don't want to. I think it's better if I don't.
I'm not interested, thanks.

10. Last night, your brother stayed up late, so he missed the bus. Blame him.

I think you shouldn't have stayed up late

11. Your friend smoked a cigarette last night.

I think you shouldn't have smoked a cigarette last night.

12-Your friend is very tired because he went to bed late last night

I think you should have gone to bed early last night.

13- Your friend drank so much coffee last night and couldn't sleep. Give him a past recommendation.

I think you shouldn't have drunk so much coffee last night.

14. Your brother did badly in the exam.

I think you should have studied hard.

15. Your little brother ate a lot of sweets and now feels ill.

I think you shouldn't have eaten a lot of sweets.

16. Your classmate is trying to persuade you to go to the club, but you refuse.

I'm not interested, thanks

17-Give the reason why you didn't like pizza.

I wasn't interested , thanks

18-You ate a lot of sweets and now you feel ill. You regret it.

I really shouldn't have eaten a lot of sweets.

17-. You smoked a cigarette and now you feel ill. You regret it.

I really shouldn't have smoked a cigarette.

20-You regret buying an old car.

I really shouldn't have bought an old car.

21- You ate too much and felt full. Express regret.

I really shouldn't have eaten too much.

22- Your friend thinks you should have tried the chocolate you bought last night. Explain your choice.

-I really didn't want to have chocolate.

23. You regret that you stopped doing exercises.

I really shouldn't have stopped doing exercises

24. Someone offers you some cheese pizza. You don't like it.

No thanks, I really don't want to.

25. Your classmate is trying to persuade you to go to the club, but you refuse.

No thanks, I really don't want to.

quite	الى حد ما	very	جدا	really	حقا	extremely	للاغاية	تقوية الرأي
-------	-----------	------	-----	--------	-----	-----------	---------	-------------

26- You have just finished the hardest test that you have ever done. Your mother asks you how the test was.

It was extremely/incredibly difficult

27- You visited England in the winter. It was the coldest place that you have been. A friend asks you what the weather was like.

It was incredibly/extremely cold

28. A friend asks you about the weather in the desert in July, Give your opinion.

- I think the weather is extremely hot in the desert in July.

29-You express your opinion about a test you have just finished.

- I think the test is quite difficult.

Asking polite questions

السؤال بطريقة مهذبة

Could you please explain to me

هل من الممكن ان تشرح لى لماذا .. ؟

I wonder if you could tell me what

اتسأل ان امكن ان تخبرنى

I'd like to know if

اريد ان اعرف اذا

Do you think we could

هل تعتقد انه يمكننا

Will/Would/Could you..., please?

هل من الممكن ان من فضلك؟

30-You would like to ask a teacher when he / she started working at the school.

I wonder if you could tell me when you started working at the school.

31- You would like to ask a teacher to explain why it is colder in the winter than in the summer.

Could you please explain to me why it is colder in the winter than in the summer?

32. You need to borrow your friend's phone.

Can I borrow your phone?

33. Politely ask your friend to open the window.

Could you open the window?

34. You ask your sister to bring you extra sugar for your tea.

Could you bring me extra sugar for my tea ?

35-You ask your teacher about the number of planets in our solar system.

Could you please tell me the number of planets in our solar system ?

36-You want to ask your teacher politely if he likes his job.

Could you please tell me if you like your job?

37-You ask your parents about their plans for the summer holiday.

Could you please tell me about your plans for the summer holiday?

38- You ask your teacher to explain something in a lesson again.

Could you please explain the lesson again?

39. Ask your teacher politely what a star is made of.

I wonder if you could tell me what a star is made of.

40. You ask your teacher about the moral of the story Black Beauty.

I wonder if you could tell me about the moral of the story Black Beauty.

41. Ask your friend politely about the job he would like to do.

Could you please tell me about the job you would like to do?

Asking for opinion طلب الرأي

What do you think of..... ?

ما رأيك في؟

How do you feel about..... ?

ما هو شعورك تجاه ؟

Do you agree ?

هل تتفق مع ذلك؟

Expressing agreement التعبير عن الموافقة في الرأي

1. I couldn't agree with you more.

لا أستطيع الاتفاق معك أكثر

2. That's (exactly) how I feel .

هذا ما اشعر به تماما

3. You have a point there.

هل تتفق مع ذلك

Expressing disagreement التعبير عن عدم الموافقة في الرأي

1. I'm afraid I (totally) disagree.

أخشى اننى لا اوافق تماما

2. I feel completely the opposite,

اشعر تماما عكس ذلك

42-A friend says that he / she thinks that the last lesson was the most interesting that you have had. You think the same. I couldn't agree with you more.

43- You think that this lesson is very interesting. You want to know what your friend thinks of it. What do you think of this lesson?/How do you feel about this lesson?

44. A friend thinks English is very difficult. You have a different opinion.

I'm afraid I disagree

45. Your friend thinks that Egypt has the best team. You agree with him.

That's (exactly) how I feel / I agree with you.

46. You bought a new T-shirt and you ask your sister about her opinion.

What do you think of my new T.shirt ?

47-You want to know what your friend thinks of yesterday's match.

What's your opinion about yesterday's match?

48-Your friend thinks that the film you both watched on TV was boring but you disagree.

I feel completely the opposite

49-Someone thinks that the Sphinx is one of the natural wonders.

I'm afraid I disagree

50- You want to know your brother's opinion about the Sphinx.

What's your opinion about the sphinx?

51. Someone says that the sphinx should be on the list of the wonders of the world. You agree. I agree with you.

52. There is a new café in your area. You want to know what your friend thinks about it.

What do you think of the new café ?

53. Your friend thinks that the waterfalls are amazing. You completely agree

I couldn't agree with you more.

54. Your friend says that the test you both did was very easy. You express your opinion. I couldn't agree with you more / I'm afraid I disagree

55. Your sister says that the food you both had was tasty. Express your agreement. I agree with you

56. A friend asks you about an interesting film you both have just watched.

I think the film is very interesting

57-A friend thinks that the Sphinx is one of the seven wonders.

I feel completely the opposite

58-You express your opinion about a test you have just finished.

I think the test is quite easy.

59- Your brother thinks that winter is very nice. Express disagreement.

I'm afraid I disagree

60. Your friend thinks that English is difficult. You have another opinion.

-I feel completely the opposite/ I'm afraid I (totally) disagree

61. You tell your brother / sister that the hotel you all stayed in was very nice. You want to know if he / she thinks the same. I think the hotel was very nice. Do you agree?

Encouraging people to continue speaking تشجيع الناس على الاستمرار في الحديث

Great! What else does it say ? عظيم ! ماذا تقول ايضا؟ Really ? Go on. حقا ؟ استمر

How wonderful! Tell me more. شئ رائع ! اخبرني المزيد Then what happened ? ثم ماذا حدث؟

What happened after that ? ماذا حدث بعد ذلك ؟

62-A friend starts to read you a news story. You want to hear more.

Go on./What else does it say?

63-A friend tells you that he / she had an interesting morning. First, he / she went to the park. You want to know more Tell me more.

64. Your friend is reading about some common internet scams. Ask for more information.

Tell me more.

65. A friend starts to read you an interesting story, but then suddenly stops.

Then what happened?

66. A classmate told you interesting news. You want to know more. Tell me more

67- Your sister is telling you a story. Encourage her to continue.

Then what happened?

68. Your friend told you that he went to the countryside. Then he stopped.

How wonderful! Tell me more

Responding to news الاستجابة عند سماع الاخبار

Good news الاخبار السارة			
Really ? I can't believe it!	حقا ؟ انا لا استطيع تصديق ذلك	How wonderful!	شئ رائع!
Bad news الاخبار السيئة			
Oh dear!	Oh , no ! يا الهى	How terrible!	شئ فظيع!

69- A friend tells you that you have won a prize.

Really? I can't believe it!/How wonderful!

70. The teacher told you that you have passed your speaking tests.

Really ? I can't believe it!

71. Your friend said a snake had escaped from the zoo and nobody knew where it was. Respond to this news

How terrible!

71. Your brother told you that he couldn't find his new mobile. Oh dear!

72- You hear that scientists have found a new medicine which will help many people.

How wonderful!

73- You wanted to go to the beach today, but your parents say that it is too windy.

I wish that it was not windy./What a pity that it is windy.

74- You see a news report about poor people who live in Asia. You would like to be able to help them.

I wish that I could help these people

75. The T.V news announced that the storm ended and this pleased you.

How wonderful!

76-Your father told you that the Egyptian football team won the match.

Really? I can't believe it!/How wonderful!

Giving dates you are not sure of اعطاء تواريخ عند عدم التاكيد

..... about	ago	منذ حوالى may be	ago	ربما منذ
..... almost	ago	تقريبا منذ approximately	ago	تقريبا منذ
In around		فى حوالى عام			
It was perhaps	When	عندما			ربما كانت

77- Your friend asks you when your father was born. You aren't sure, but you give an answer.

Maybe in 1977./About 40 years ago

78-A friend asks you when the first car was made. You think that it was 150 years ago ,but you are not sure.

I think it was maybe 150 years ago.

79. Your cousin asks you when your school was built.

I think it was maybe 40 years ago.

80. You're asked about your uncle's date of birth. You aren't sure. About 50 years ago

Showing relief التعبير عن الشعور بالارتياح

Phew! صوت للتعبير عن الارتياح What a relief! كم هذا مريح Thank goodness for that! الحمد لله

Showing excitement التعبير عن الإثارة

Great! عظيم I can't wait! لا استطيع الانتظار I'm looking forward to that! اتطلع لذلك

81. Someone was lost in the desert, but he has just been found.

What a relief

82- You thought you did badly in an exam, but your teacher said you did well.

Thank goodness for that

General situations

83. Invite your friend to have dinner with you at your house.

Would you like to come to have dinner with me at my house?

84. You advice a friend of yours who is ill. You should see a doctor

85. You are asked about the disadvantages of smoking.

I think smoking causes lung diseases.

86- Your friend suggests going to the beach tomorrow. Agree. Good idea.

87. You see some people leaving their rubbish on the beach. You shouldn't do that

88. Your friend is addicted to smoking. Advise him. You should stop smoking.

89. You would like to be able to help poor people in your country.

I wish I could help poor people in my country.

90. Your uncle gave you a digital camera for your birthday. Thank you ,uncle.

91- Your younger sister wants to know why you want to be a doctor.

I want to be a doctor to help ill people.

92-You are with your friend on a bus when you find a watch on the floor .

Excuse me! This is your watch! .

93-You borrowed your friend's phone and you broke it

I'm really sorry. I broke your phone

Black Beauty

1. Why is it important to look after working animals carefully ?

- Because they work much better when they are given food and are looked after well.

2- Do you think that Black Beauty was angry with Ginger after the accident ? Why / Why not?

No, because he realised that Ginger only did this because the reins were uncomfortable,

3- Do you think Filcher deserved to be arrested? Why?

Yes, I do. Because he was not a good man and only thought about himself and his family, not about Black Beauty.

4- Do you think that Ginger was right to start to kick? Why / Why not?

Yes, because she was very uncomfortable

No, she should have worked hard like Black Beauty.

5. How do we know that York cared about Ginger and Beauty ?

- He was angry about these reins

- He washed their wounds with hot water.

6- Do you think that Black Beauty was angry with Ginger because he was hurt? Why / Why not?

No, because he realised that Ginger only did this because the reins were uncomfortable,

7- Why do you think that Eart Smythe said that he might not get much money for Ginger?

Because Ginger was hurt. She also does not always do what her owners want.

8- How do we know that Jerry cares about horses?

- He does not take the passengers quickly to the station because he always thinks about his horse. He does not want his horses to be tired.

9. Why did Black Beauty think that Jerry was the best owner he ever had?

- Because he gave Black Beauty good food and fresh water.

- He was kind to him as he was a good driver

10- How easy do you think it was for people to travel around London at this time?

- It was probably quite difficult because there were no cars, trains or buses. Only wealthy people could take a taxi or carriage because

they were probably expensive

11. Why do you think that one of the taxi drivers said that Black Beauty was too handsome to do that job?

He can see that Black Beauty is a strong, healthy horse. Perhaps thinks that he is too good to do hard, difficult work.

12- Why do you think that Jerry took Captain to work on Beauty's first morning in London?

I think he did not want Black Beauty to have a difficult first day.

13-How do we know that Jerry was a kind man?

-Because he took the woman to hospital when he saw that she needed help.

14-Why do you think that each of Ginger's owners paid less money for her?

- Because he became weaker and weaker and couldn't do work very well.

15-Do you think that people were always happy to have Jerry as a taxi driver? Why? / Why not?

- He wasn't probably popular with everyone because he didn't always do what people asked him to do.

16- Why do you think the rich man did not apologise to Jerry when he had to wait for him in the cold?

The rich man probably thought that it was Jerry's job to wait for him. He did not think that this might be difficult for Jerry and Black Beauty.

17-Do you think that the man should pay Jerry for the time he waited outside the house? Why /Why not?

Yes, he should pay him. If Jerry did not wait, he could take other passengers to places and get more money.

18- Why do you think that Jerry became ill?

- He had to wait outside the house of a rich man and it was very cold

19- Why do you think that Black Beauty was worried when Jerry found work with Mrs Fowler?

-Because he was becoming old and he knew that he might have more difficult work to do in the future.

20- Why do you think that Skinner told the girl not to worry after she said that Black Beauty looked too weak to carry their bags?

- I think because he didn't want to lose money.

21- Why do you think that Black Beauty was sold at the part of the market where the horses were old or ill-looking?

Because Black Beauty had been ill and now he looked old.

23- Why do you think that Skinner told the girl not to worry after she said that Black Beauty looked too weak to carry their bags?

-I think Skinner told the girl not to worry because he didn't want to

lose money- He had to work for seven days a week to get enough money, even when his horses were weak or ill.

24- Why do you think that Skinner makes Black Beauty work so hard?

He was very poor and had to work hard to get enough money to live. He probably did not think that the health of his horse was important.

25- At the station, do you think that Skinner knew that Black Beauty was too weak to carry the family and their bags? Why? /Why not?

I think that he knew, although he told the girl that Black Beauty was OK. However, he needed to take the family to get more money.

26- What do you think of Skinner?

- I think Skinner was a bad owner because he never gave his horses a good rest or enough to eat.

27. Do you think that Jerry was kind to his horses? Why / Why not?

- Yes, I do. Because he gave them good food, fresh water and a good rest. He pulled the reins lightly.

28- Why do you think Ginger stop kicking people who weren't good to her?

- Because she wasn't strong enough to kick any more.

29. Do you think that Skinner was right to sell Black Beauty? Why / Why not?

- Yes, I do. Because Black Beauty was no good as he couldn't work.

Or No, I don't. Because Skinner didn't give Black Beauty enough food to work well.

30-Do you think that Skinner was a bad owner ? Why ?

- Yes, I do. Because he worked seven days a week and never gave his horses a good rest or enough to eat.

31. What do you think of the two men who jumped into the taxi before the poor woman?

- I think they were impolite and unkind.

32. What do you think might have happened if Black Beauty continued to work for skinner a long time?

- I think Black Beauty might have died

33. What did York think about the special reins?

- He was angry about the special reins but he could do nothing.

34. Do you think that Skinner and Filcher were kind to Beauty? Why / Why not?

- No, both of them were unkind to Black Beauty. Filcher stole his food and gave it to his rabbits. Skinner

35. In what ways was Earlshall park better than Birtwick park?

- It was much bigger and more modern.

36. Why do you think that Black Beauty felt sorry for some of the taxi drivers and their horses?

- Because they had to work very long hours to get enough money. Some of them worked seven days a week.

37. Do you think that Ginger was right to start to kick when they were in the carriage? Why / Why not?

- Yes, because she was very uncomfortable. /

No, she should have worked hard like Black Beauty.

38. What did you learn from the story "Black Beauty"?

- I learned to be kind to horses and people.

Also, I learned not to be a liar. I learned that life isn't always comfortable but it is full of troubles and I should face these troubles and solve them.

39. What is the moral of the story?

- The moral of the story is that we should be kind to animals and people.

40. Do you think that the poor woman was pleased with Jerry Barker? Why?

- Yes, I do. Because Jerry took her to hospital for free.

41. Why do you think that the people who looked at Black beauty at the market were very poor?

- Because they wanted to buy a horse for as little money as possible.

42. Do you think the Earl really loved the horses? Why?

- No, I don't. Because he decided to sell them as they were hurt.

43. Do you like Jerry's character? Why?

- Yes, I do. Because he was kind to both horses and people.

44. Do you think the story had a happy ending ? Why ?

- Yes, I do. Black Beauty's work at Miss Bloomfield's home was easy and he felt strong again. His troubles were over.

45. In your opinion , how should people treat the animals that they work for them ?

- In my opinion, people should treat the animals that work for them kindly.

46. Why do you think Mr. Barry's doctor advised him to ride a horse?

To be healthy.

47. Why do you think Earl Smythe's wife used special reins?

Because she liked the latest fashion and that was one of them.

48. How do you think holidays were not common for taxi drivers?

- Because they had to work very long hours to get enough money. Some of them worked seven days a week.

49-Who was the character you liked most in this story? Why?

I liked Jerry most as he was a good driver and he was kind to his horses.

50-Do you think Skinner was greedy? Why/Why not?

No, I think he was poor and needed money but he wasn't kind.

51-How do you think the rich man changed Jerry's life?

As he was late and Jerry waited him in the cold weather that made him ill and the doctor told him to stop working as a taxi driver so he sold his horses.

52-Why do you think it was difficult for horses to pull the carriage up a hill.

Because of the special reins.

53- Why do you think Jerry refused to go faster and took an extra pound?

Because he didn't want to make his horses feel tired.

54- Do you think the man in Bath was right to hire Black Beauty to bad drivers? Why / Why not?

Yes, as Beauty was a perfect horse and he wouldn't make any troubles.

55- How do you think Joe Green changed in the end?

He became a young man and he was a very good helper.

56- Why do you think the men at the market opened Black Beauty's mouth?

To examine him and know his age.

57- Did you enjoy reading Black Beauty? Why / Why not?

Yes, I did as it was full of adventures.

58-Do you think that Mr Thoroughgood was right to buy Black Beauty? Why / Why not?

Yes , because Beauty was a very good horse and he was old at all.

59-What did you learn from the story "Black Beauty"?

I learned that horses aren't machines and they need to have good food and enough rest.

Choose

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is the..... of the number 10 bus?

a. arrival b. destination c. meeting d.stop

2. Some students work in the holidays to..... some money.

a. spend b.lose c.give d.earn

3. Egypt can be hot in August.

a. special b. excellent c. especially d. specialised

4 We didn't have much money so we bought..... class tickets.

a. first b. express c. stopping d. economy

5 It is sad that some people becometo computer games.

a. upset b. successful c. addicted d. hard

6 My uncle is the..... of a factory. He gives instructions to the workers.

- a. captain b. manager c. mechanic d. secretary
- 7- The teacher wanted us to how the earth goes around the sun.
a. explain b. advise c. regret d. control
- 8- When we went on holiday, the hotel was ... : it had everything we needed.
a. personal b. perfect c. boring d. terrible
- 9- The shop is for a new assistant. Perhaps Manal can work there.
a. investing b. writing c. arranging d. advertising
- 10- This email asks for my computer password. It might be a
a. score b. skin c. scam d. scan
- 11- My brother went to a good university and had a great
a. entertainment b. population c. education d. invitation
- 12- It is hot today. It must be about forty
a. degrees b. dots c. metres d. hot
- 13 Don't be ! You have already eaten a big ice cream.
a. honest b. greedy c. hardworking d. kind
- 14 The came from space and landed in the sea.
a. mountain b. minaret c. meteorite d. monument
- 15 The showed us how to dive under water.
a. hero b. interviewer c. instructor d. inventor
- 16 How many eggs do the farmer's chickens each day?
a. lie b. give c. lay d. put
- 17 People have used to make cups for hundreds of years.
a. stone b. clay c. straw d. sticks
- 18 This book is I don't want to read it any more.
a. special b. excellent c. terrible d. greedy
19. Mayar's cousin is going to live in Cairo, so she has bought a/an ticket.
a. single b. only c. express d. return
20. It's hot today, but the hotel room is cool because it has air
a. communication b. condensation c. conditioning d. cleaning
21. We love to watch the beautiful from the train windows.
a. tickets b. journey c. station d. scenery
22. We took a to cross from one side of the Nile to the other.
a. train b. bicycle c. ferry d. car
23. Do you want to catch the stopping train or the train
a. express b. platform c. carriage d. pavement

24. I'm going to take the train to Aswan.

- a. **sleeper** b. slept c. sleeping d. asleep

25. The class had a to decide which of the students' projects was the best.

- a. vet b. view c. **vote** d. vitamin

26. When a doctor cuts into your body to help you get better, then you have a/an

- a. addiction b. **operation** c. breath d. trip

27. The ticket..... works at a bus station.

- a. manager b. cleaner c- **inspector** d. waiter

28. If you are..... of something, you are pleased because it's good.

- a. afraid b. angry c. **proud** d. fond

29. A is where you get on and off a train.

- a. pavement b. **platform** c. carriage d. theatre

30. A/An is a building from which scientists watch space.

- a. skyscraper b. **observatory** c. hospital d. post office

31. When you make something easy to understand, then you it.

- a. freeze b. **explain** c. turn d. wonder

32. Earth is one of eight.... in the solar system.

- a. stars b. **planets** c. moons d, shooting stars

33. Hassan is very interested in space and wants to be an

- a. engineer b. **astronomer** c. accountant d. actor

34. A star is a piece of rock that moves quickly through space.

- a. flying b. **shooting** c. hitting d. picking

35. Is lake Nasser natural or is it.....?

- a. modern b, traditional c. **man-made** d, personal

36. There's a big where the river goes over a cliff.

- a. fall b. **waterfall** c. water drop d. water cycle

37. I his name and thought he was called Tim instead of Tom.

- a. **misread** b. misprinted c. redid d. reread

38. The top of a building that is in the shape of half a ball is called

- a. minaret b. **dome** c. marble d. monument

39. We saw some famous paintings in the new art

- a. **gallery** b. hospital c. bakery d. post office

40. The Sphinx is a famous that many people visit.

- a. tower b. **monument** c. museum d. gallery

41. The is a common white water bird.

- a. grasshopper b. goose c. hen d. ant
42. It's a good idea to ask a wise person for.....
- a. food b. wonders c. money d. advice
43. If you have enough water, you are.....
- a. thirsty b. not thirsty c. hungry d. not hungry
44. If you feel content, you are
- a. sad b. angry c. scared d. happy
45. A story with a moral has a
- a. message b. sad ending c. happy ending d. no ending
46. What was the of the accident?
- a. building b. reason c. cause d. ambulance
47. We need to protect many of our animals if we don't want them to..... out.
- a. give b. take c. die d. live
48. are ideas we are not sure about.
- a. Novels b. Threats c. Theories d. Stories
49. Manual workers always wear a and boots.
- a. hat b. shirt c. cap d. helmet
50. The fishermen keep their equipment in small wooden..... on the beach.
- a. caves b. huts c. cars d. gardens
51. The heart is thethat pumps blood around the body.
- a. member b. organ c. number d. skull
52. Rahma a lot of money on clothes.
- a. sends b. presents c. spends d. starts
53. A/An..... was shown on TV yesterday. It gave me information about animals in the past.
- a. Comedy b. Documentary c. Adventure d. Competition
54. Most youth know how to use..... sites.
- a. social media b. advertisement c. Development d. arrangement
55. Volcanoes produce dust and gas when they
- a. interrupt b. fall c. erupt d. enter
56. On the train, you can eat in the restaurant.....
- a. car b. carriage c. part d. truck
57. The terrible smoke from the fire made me..... a lot.
- a. continue b. practise c. cough d. start
58. The..... show that there were more than 700 kinds of dinosaurs.
- a. activities b. volcanoes c. gases d. fossils

59. We don't like..... people as they want more money, food,... etc.than they need.

- a. lazy b. greedy c. active d. brave

60. Today, Mona has a lot of work to..... in the office.

- a. do b. make c. take d. give

61. The workers used to build the palace for the King. It looks wonderful.

- a. papyrus b. soil c. dome d. marbles

62. A is a tall, thin tower.

- a. minaret b. dome c. monument d. marble

63. Our was at the front of the train.

- a. carriage b. station c. destination d. ticket

64- My sister an operation last Monday. She is better now.

- a. made b. did c. had d. took

65..... a decision to stop smoking is great.

- a. Having b. Making c. Doing d. Moving

66- The farmer puts all the farm in o large bin.

- a. animals b. money c. refuse d. trees

67- The food in the restaurant is usually good.

- a. quit b. quite c. quiet d. quietly

68 - Businessmen from different countries like to ----- their money in Egypt.

- a. invest b. encourage c. accept d. decide

69- Football is a game, you need to be fit to play it.

- a. psychological b. physical c. electrical d. mechanical

70- He asked me to tell him about my work

- a. experiment b. experience c. operation d. movement

71- I if you could tell me what o star is made of.

- a. wonder b. wonderful c. wander d. winter

72- Students at technical schools learn that they can use in the world of work.

- a. falls b. hobbies c, sights d. skills

73- No one likes him; he is always to others.

- a. polite b. helpful c. rude d. honest

74- We can use our phones to money to or from a bank or even to pay for things in shops.

- a. develop b. transfer c. increase d. advertise

75- We can't publish the report like this .it's full of -----

- a. prints b. printing c. printers d. misprints

76. The Great Pyramid at Giza is one of the wonders of the ancient world.

- a. original b. journal c. usual d. normal

77. Many jobs..... you to know how to use social media.

- a. acquire b. require c. inquire d. secure
78. Now, we can for things using mobile phones.
a. fine b. pay c. speak d. send
79. Some companies use social media to..... jobs.
a. delete b. arrange c. advertise d. buy
80. Ants usually..... food for winter.
a. collect b. connect c. select d. reflect
81. Scientists have worked..... that dinosaurs died out about 65 million years ago.
a. out b. at c. in d. about
82. TheAge was about 8,000 years ago.
a. Ice b. Stone c. Atom d. Internet
83. My father works hard to more money.
a. win b. gain c. lose d. earn
- 84..... work in dangerous places.
a. Nurses b. Firefighters c. Teachers d. Writers
85. No one can believe this. This man is..... tall; 220 cm.
a. simply b. incredibly c. simple d. incredible
86. Weather..... from summer to winter.
a. invites b. moves c. changes d. runs
87. Baghdad is a big city in
a. Greece b. Iraq c. Egypt d. England
88. How many eggs do your chickens every day?
a. buy b. put c. lie d. lay
89. A.....is a machine which astronomers use to look at planets and stars,
a. telescope b. camera c. microscope d. thermometer
- 90 my brother had a terrible accident.
a. Luckily b. Hopefully c. Fortunately d. Unfortunately
91. You should wear a..... on your head when you ride a bike.
a. boot b. helmet c. hat d. cap
92. The tourist a taxi and asked the driver to take him to the hotel.
a. got on b. got off c. got into d. got out off
93. It is a good idea to ask a person for advice.
a. greedy b. foolish c. careless d. wise
94. is the study of the stars.
a. Astrology b. Biology c. Astronomy d. Archaeology
95. The Taj Mahal has four tall
a. minarets b. houses c. fountains d. monuments
96. You ask for a / an when a car or a machine breaks down.
a. cleaner b. manager c. inspector d. mechanic

97. You can play a sport instead watching too much TV.
a.off b.of c.at d.on
98. The use of computers in the world of business is an important
a.development b.accident c.government d.monument
99. When volcanoes , they put a lot of dust and gas in the atmosphere.
a.interrupt b.erupt c.accept d.adapt
100. They are because they received the news of their success.
a.scared b.corrupt c.distant d.content
101. She is he left nothing on the table for anyone to eat.
a.kind b.greedy c.nice d.excellent
102. A lot of ancient mosques have in the middle.
a.temples b.carriages c.hippos d.fountains
103. The sun is the only in our solar system.
a.moon b.star c.planet d.plane
104. Ehab's knee is very painful and he needs a - an.....
a. addiction b. intention c. pollution d. operation
105. Osama is coughing all the time, I think he has a problem with his.....
a. head b. eyes c. lungs d. knees
106. You can usually find trees and birds at an in the desert.
a. art gallery b. adventure c. object d. oasis
107. It's a - an.....that all manual workers wear boots.
a. government b. requirement c. enjoyment d. payment
108.have found an ancient building in the desert.
a. Nurses b. Managers c. Archaeologist d. Doctors
109. A: What does the Earth do every day? B: It..... around the sun.
a. turns b. falls c. freezes d. stops
110. My brother broke his phone and needs someone to it.
a. repair b. make c. explain d. report
111.work is not all automatic.
a. Annual b. Usual c. Visual d. Manual
112. In the past, people used to live in.....
a. villas b. caves c. palaces d. hotels
113. Warda was because she got a good job at Al - Ahli bank.
a. bored b. delighted c. exhausted d. frightened
114. The Taj Mahal in India has a beautiful white and four minarets.
a. dam b. dome c. pyramid d. temple
115. The earth turns.....itself once a day.
a. around b. about c. through d. with
116. Fishermen aren't allowed to sail today as the sea is.....

- a. rough b. calm c. nice d. good
117. This basketball team are They've won all their matches this year.
- a. careless b. helpless c. successful d. colourful
118. My mother is a dressmaker, she likes to clothes.
- a. buy b. saw c. sew d. sell
119. Smoking often causes
- a. operation b. development c. lung diseases d. sleep
- 120- Many jobs now you to know how to use social media.
- a. refer b. transfer c. require d. request
- 121- can look at the planets through a telescope.
- a. Astronauts b. Astronomers c. Astrologers d. Astronomy
- 122- Earth is one of the eight planets in our system.
- a. cellar b. solar c. molar d. sugar
- 123- I if you can get me something from the supermarket.
- a. wonder b. offer c. wander d. warn
- 124- His letter never reached its as he didn't write the address correctly.
- a. station b. destination c. home d. building
- 125- Manual work requires different
- a. skills b. sales c. scams d. smiles
- 126- Mazin is always to all his classmates. They like him.
- a. helpful b. painful c. useless d. careless
- 127- Planes are the fastest means of
- a. transform b. translation c. transport d. transfer
- 128- This nice jacket is made of an animal
- a. leather b. scam c. skin d. helmet
- 129- are a group of animals that live together in large groups.
- a. Morals b. Corals c. Crops d. Models
- 130- Dinosaurs were animals which had died
- a. out b. of c. from d. in
- 131- Students aren't allowed to foolish things in class.
- a. make b. take c. do d. get
- 132- It is a source of pride for us that Egypt has got most of the ancient world
- a. galleries b. monuments c. mountains d. projects
- 133- You can take photos by your smartphone.
- a. digital b. final c. careful d. painful
- 134- You said Nour had a bad accident, how !
- a. wonderful b. terrible c. good d. funny
- 135- Laptops, tablets and smartphones are examples of
- a. electronics b. clinics c. electricians d. scams

- 136- My family and I always go holiday in May.
a.at b. to c. on d.of
- 137- I read a/an about the new story I want to buy.
a. view b. interview c. review d. vision
- 138- I have learned a lot of in that story.
a. morals b. moons c. models d. modes
- 139- Thirty of people in Amsterdam travel to work by bike.
a. preserve b. percent c. present d. prize
- 140- I like reading newspapers.
a. online b. outline c. line d. in line
- 141- Do as I tell you, or you'll it later on.
a. regret b. intend c arrest d. affect
- 142- Someone has my car from the park.
a. robbed b. stolen c. booked d. advised
- 143- The farmers were worried that the insects might their crops.
a. repair b. fix c. mend d. damage
- 144- Shady works hard and does good researches online. I know..... sure he will succeed.
a. about b. for c. in d. with
- 145- design buildings to work and live in.
a. Inspectors b. Architects c. Technicians d. Archaeologists
- 146- By studying , scientists have worked out how long dinosaurs lived on earth.
a. lizards b. meteorites c. fossils d. eruptions
- 147- About 3 million travel on the metro line every day.
a. paths b. messengers c. passages d. passengers
- 148- Young people should always listen to the..... words from their grandparents.
a. free b.content c. wise d. sad
- 149- They decided to build a..... around the garden of the house.
a. wall b. wool c. wind d. whale
- 150- Students always quizzes at school.
a. do b.make c. bring d.give
- 151- This course will help you to your English.
a. prove b. move c. remove d. improve
152. It took seven years to.....the decision.
a. make b.give c.do d.play
- 153- There's a problemmy car engine.
a. to b. with c. by d. at
- 154- A..... is an organ which helps you breathe.
a. leg b. hand c. lung d. eye

Rewrite

Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets, to give the same meaning.

- 1- My father **promised** to buy a tablet for my sister. (will) وعد
- I **will** buy you a camera if you get high marks.
2. I **quickly decided** to watch a film on TV. (will) قرار سريع
- I **will** watch a film on TV.
- 3- I am hungry. I **have just decided** to have a sandwich, (will) قرار سريع
- I'm hungry. I **will** have a sandwich.
- 4-He **plans** to spend the weekend in Alexandria. (going) خطة
- He **is going** to spend the weekend in Alexandria.
- 5-Aya **has intended** to travel by train. (going) نية
- Aya **is going** to travel by train.
6. Logeen **is going** to travel by train, (intends) نية
- Logeen **intends** to travel by train.
- 7- What **do you intend** to study next year? (are) نية
- What **are you going** to study next year?
8. There are many **clouds** in **sky**. (going) دليل
- It **is going** to rain.
- 9-We **have arranged** to take the sleeper train to Aswan. (taking) ترتيب
- We **are taking** the sleeper to Aswan .
10. I've **already arranged** to visit the museum tomorrow. (I'm) (visiting) ترتيب
- I'm **visiting** the museum tomorrow.
11. The train from Cairo to Alex **is** at 9 a.m. (leaves) جدول
- The train from Cairo to Alex **leaves** at 9 a.m.
12. Omnya **prepared** to travel to America tonight, (travelling) ترتيب
- Omnya **is travelling** to America tonight
13. What is the destination of the golden bus? (going)
- Where is the golden bus going?
- 14-I tried the fish at the restaurant, but I **regret** it. (shouldn't)
- I **shouldn't have tried** the fish at the restaurant.
15. I bought an old car but I **regret**. (shouldn't)
- I **shouldn't have bought** an old car..
16. Mona didn't clean her teeth, (should)
- Mona should have cleaned her teeth.

17. It was important for him not to play in the street, (shouldn't)
He shouldn't have played in the street.
18. I blame you for annoying your teacher yesterday, (shouldn't have)
You shouldn't have annoyed your teacher yesterday.
19. I didn't read all the questions before answering the exam. (should)
I should have read all the questions before answering the exam.
- 20- Amr's arm hurts. Perhaps he broke it. (might)
Amr might have broken his arm
- 21- Perhaps if I exercise every day, I will lose weight. (might)
If I exercise everyday, I might lose weight.
22. Perhaps if we see the teacher, she can help us with our homework. (might)
If we see the teacher, she might help us with our homework.
23. If I see Sayed, perhaps I'll ask him to help me with my homework. (might)
If I see Sayed, I might ask him to help me with my homework
24. I am not sure where Ali is. Perhaps he is in the park. (might)
Ali might be in the park
25. It's possible that he caught the train, (might)
He might have caught the train.
- 26- It's probable that he broke his leg. It hurts him. (might)
He might have broken his leg.
27. I can't remember if I saw that film or not. (might)
I might have seen that film
- 28- Sami didn't come to the party. No one invited him. (can't)
Sami can't have come to the party
- 28- It is not possible that you saw Mona yesterday. She is in England. (can't)
You can't have seen Mona yesterday. She is in Paris.
29. I am sure that he travelled by bus. (must)
He must have travelled by bus.
30. I must have left my notebook at home. (sure)
I'm sure , I left my notebook at home.
31. Sara fell asleep on the bus home. I'm sure she was tired. (must)
Sara must have been tired.
32. The streets are wet It rained a lot yesterday, (must)
It must have rained a lot yesterday.
- 33 "Stand up, please," the teacher said to Ali. (ordered)
The teacher ordered Ali to stand up.
- 34- "Don't be late, Huda." (Huda's father ordered)
Huda's father told her not to be late.
35. "Clean the room, Aya." said mother. (Mother told)

Mother told Aya to clean the room.

36- "Look out, Ahmed!" Nabil said.

(warned)

Nabil warned Ahmed to look out.

37- "Don't touch the snake," Nawal said to Ola.

(warned)

Nawal warned Ola not to touch the snake.

38- "You must stop smoking!" the doctor said to Hatem.

(advised)

The doctor advised Hatem to stop smoking.

39. "Please don't be late, " the teacher said to me.

(advised)

The teacher advised me not to be late.

40- "Go on! You can swim across the pool!" Father said to him. (encouraged)

Father encourage him to cross the pool.

41- The coach said to the players, "Do your best during the match." (encouraged)

The coach encouraged the players to do their best.

42. "Keep working". Said the teacher to the class.

(encouraged)

The teacher encouraged the class to keep working.

43- "English is my favourite subject," Ali said to me.

(told)

Ali told me that English is his favourite subject.

44- "I don't like this film," Ayman said.

(said that)

Ayman said that he don't like that film.

45- "What is the fastest way to Capital Bank?"

(I asked)

I asked what the fastest way was to Capital Bank.

46- What's the name of the biggest city in England?

(like to know)

I'd like to know the name of the biggest city in England.

47. "Where did you buy that shirt?" he said to me.

(asked)

He asked me where I had bought that shirt.

48. "What is your favourite subject, Sara?"

(I asked)

I asked Sara what her favourite subject was.

49- "How cold does it get in the desert?"

(I asked)

I asked how cold it got in the desert.

50- "How long does it take you to do it?" Noha said to Sara. (Noha asked)

Noha asked Sara how long it took her to do it.

51- I asked Nehal about her address.

(said to)

I said to Nehal , "Where do you live?"

I said to Nehal , "What is your address?"

52. "When are you coming to Egypt ?" Shady said to his friend, (asked)

Shady asked his friend when he was coming to Egypt

53. Hoda said "Did you do your homework?"

(if)

Hoda asked me if I had done my homework.

- 54- Will you take me to see the new capital, dad? (Areej asked)
Areej asked her dad if he would take her to see the new capital.
55. "Are you an astronomer ?" The students asked the professor. (if)
The students asked the professor if he was an astronomer.
56. " Will you finish your homework before dinner" (Kareem asked his sister)
Kareem asked his sister if she would finish her homework before dinner.
57. We have collected a lot of money for the charity.(A lot of money..)
A lot of money has been collected for the charity
58. The government has built new cities in the desert, (been)
New cities have been built in the desert.
59. They have planted trees along the river. (been)
Trees have been planted along the river.
60. They have painted the building. (been)
The building has been painted .
- 61- The police have closed the road to the airport. (been)
The road to the airport has been closed to the airport.
62. My mother hasn't cleaned my room yet. (been)
My room hasn't been cleaned by mu mother yet.
63. Our school has won the competition. (by)
The competition has been won by our school..
- 64- Have you tidied your room? (been)
Has your room been tided ?
- 65- Has the surgeon performed the operations (Have)
Have the operations been performed by the surgeon?
- 66- When have they bought the new car? (has)
When has the new car been bought?
67. Leila has made a cake for the family party. (A cake)
A cake has been made for the family.
68. Salwa hasn't done her homework yet (Salwa`s homework)
Salwa's homework hasn't been done yet.
69. Adam has won the first prize. (The first prize)
The first prize has been won by Adam.
70. She hasn't cooked lunch yet. (Lunch)
Lunch hasn't been cooked yet.
71. Mona has cleaned all the rooms. (All)
All the rooms have been cleaned by Mona.
- 72-Someone has drawn some nice pictures. (Some nice pictures)
Some nice pictures have been drawn.
- 73- The white dish hasn't been washed yet. (I....)

- I haven't washed the white dish yet.
- 74- You should sleep early. (If)
If I were you , I'd sleep early.
75. I advise you to stop smoking to be in good health. (If)
If I were you , I'd stop smoking.
78. I advise you not to tell lies. (If)
If I were you , I wouldn't tell lies.
77. I'm not rich enough to buy this car (If)
If I were rich , I 'd buy this car.
- 78- I go to bed late so I can't get up early. (If)
If I didn't go to bed late , I would get up early.
- 79- I can't go on holiday because I don't have enough time. (If)
If I had enough money , I could go on holiday.
80. If Sama doesn't study hard, she won't succeed. (Unless)
Unless sama studies hard , she won't succeed.
81. First, my mother cooked us food. Then, I arrived. (As soon as)
As soon as mother had cooked us food , I arrived
82. We visited the museum then we went home. (After)
After we had visited the museum we went home.
83. First we booked the tickets, then we went to the concert. (before)
We had booked the tickets before we went to the concert.
- 84- The lesson started, then Dina arrived in the classroom. (when)
The lesson had started when we arrived at the class.
- 85- First, I went shopping. Then, I made food. (Before)
Before I made food, I had gone shopping.
86. After chasing the thief, the police arrested him. (had)
After the police had chased the thief, they arrested him.
87. After watching TV, I went out (until)
I didn't go out until I had watch TV.
88. After we had visited the museum, we decided to have lunch. (until)
We didn't decide to have lunch until we had visited the museum.
89. First, I finished my work, then I went to the club. (until)
I didn't go to the club until I had finished my work
- 90- I went to the park because I had finished my homework. (After)
After I had finished my homework , I went to the park.
- 91- After finishing his work, he went home. (Before)
Before he went home , I had finished his work.
- 92- Sally didn't see the Eiffel Tower because she didn't go to Paris. (If)
If Sally had been to Paris , she would have seen the Eiffel Tower.

93. If he had studied hard, he would have succeeded, (didn't)
 He didn't study hard so he didn't succeed.
 He didn't succeed because he didn't study hard.
- 94-I didn't recognise your cousin so I didn't say hello. (If)
 If I had recognised your cousin, I would have said hello.
95. I was ill, so I didn't go to work. (If)
 If I hadn't been ill, I would have gone to work
 If I had been well, I would have gone to work
96. She punished her son because he had not told the truth. (If)
 If her son had told the truth , she wouldn't punished him.
97. I didn't have much money, so I didn't buy that expensive laptop. (If)
 If I had had much money , I would have bought that expensive laptop.
- 98.I didn't see the last question so I didn't answer it. (If)
 If I had seen the last question , I would have answered it.
- 99-I didn't bring my phone, so I didn't call you. (If)
 If I had brought my phone , I would have called you.
- 100-I forgot my library card. I couldn't borrow a book. (If)
 If I hadn't forgotten my library card , I could have borrowed a book.

معانی کلمات (ملغی)

- 1.I can't wait to go to the museum tomorrow. (look forward)
 I am looking forward to going to the museum tomorrow.
2. I want to be an engineer, (look forward)
 I look forward to being an engineer.
- 3-Do you have as much water as you need? (enough)
 Do you have enough water?
- 4-They didn't like the colour of the house, so they decided to paint it again with a different colour. (repaint)
 They didn't like the colour of the house, so they decided to repaint it with a different colour.
- 5- I liked the book a lot, so I decided to read it again. (reread)
 I liked the book a lot, so I decided to reread it

Paragraphs

Travelling by train (Your favourite means of transport)

We all agree that travelling is very useful. Many people prefer travelling by train. Travelling by train is enjoyable. It's fun seeing the scenery when you travel. You must buy tickets before you get on a train. You can use a rail card. It's cheaper than buying tickets. You should be early at your railway station to get into your right train. The express train is much better than the stopping train. It is fast and has air conditioning. It doesn't stop at all stations. It stops at the main stations only. You can find a comfortable seat to sit in. You can book a ticket on a non-smoking carriage. It has sleeping carriages and a restaurant carriage. It's great fun travelling by train.

The dangers of smoking

There is no doubt that smoking is a very bad habit. Many people are addicted to smoking. It damages health. It causes many dangerous diseases. It causes lung diseases. If you smoke, you should give it up. If you can't, you should talk to your parents, your friends or your teacher. That might help you with your problem. You can also ask a doctor for help. One day you will regret starting smoking. If you don't smoke, never try it. This may cause harm to you. You may not be able to work hard for your exams. You may cough all the time عادة ضارة and become very ill. Smoking is a very harmful habit.

Social networking sites addiction

We can't deny that social networking sites are very important. They help and our friends. They help us to know اقارب as to communicate with our relatives , some people use them too من ناحية اخرى the latest news. On the other hand much. They like using them very much. They are addicted to them. That is a waste of time. That is not useful. They should use them only for an hour a day. I think they should play games or do a hobby. Social networking sites might their eyes. Visiting our relatives and talking يضر make them ill and might harm to our friends is better than using them all the time.

The importance of technical education

We all agree that Technical education is very important nowadays. Without it, there would be no mechanics, electricians or nurses. Sixty per cent of students go to technical schools. Students at technical schools learn skills that they can use in the world of work. These skills are extremely important for the future of our country. They can learn about work in hotels and shops. These skills can really help them after they graduate. There are many more technical

schools around Egypt. Each school teaches a different skill. Students who do very well at technical schools can then continue to study at university.

The job you would like (your future job)

I have a lot of dreams for my future .One of my dreams is to be dentist. It is a tiring job but I like it very much. I always work hard at school to get high marks to go to a secondary school then to the university to be a dentist. I would like to have my own clinic. I would like to have the best equipment in my clinic. I am going to travel abroad to learn the latest technology to be better. I am going to help the poor patients. I hope I will be a famous dentist.

The solar system

We can't deny that our world is amazing. It is a part of the universe . Above us there is the space. There are eight planets in our solar system. They are all different sizes.' biggest planet is 1,000 times bigger than earth. Three of the planets are smaller than earth. Only two planets in the solar system don't have any moons. earth's moon is round. The other moons are different shapes and sizes. A shooting star is not a star. It is a small piece of rock that is traveling through space. When it moves, it gets hotter. It usually burns and disappears before falling on to the earth. When the sun shines on the moon, it's very - It's around 123 degrees.

A visit to an observatory

Last weekend, my family visited an observatory. We met some astronomers there. They were so friendly. One of them welcomed us. We asked him a lot of questions about his work. He said that his favourite part was when he used a telescope. We asked him questions about our solar system. He gave us very useful information. He told us about shooting stars. He told us about the moons which go round the planets. He told us about the sun, too. He let us look through the huge telescope. We could see thousands of stars

One of the ancient wonders of the world "The Taj Mahal"

Our world is very beautiful and there are a lot of ancient and modern wonders. The Taj Mahal is one of the world's wonders. It's a white marble monument. It was built by the ruler of India to remember his wife. It has fountains, gardens around it, a beautiful dome and four minarets. It has been visited by millions of people. Unfortunately, it has been damaged by pollution. UNESCO helps to look after it. It will preserve it, too. I wish I could visit it once more in the future.

The latest technology

We all agree that technology plays a very important role in our modern life. It gives us the chance to do many things in a short time. It also saves our time and money. It makes the world as a small village. As for me I like using it very

much. I have a smart phone. I use it to communicate with my friends and my relatives. I use it to take photos. I also use it to log on the internet and know the latest news. I use my mobile phone to play different games. Modern technology helps us greatly in our life. We can use it everywhere. It changes our life. It makes it faster and easier. All of us use it. We use it to help us in learning. Doctor use it to help them. Engineers use it. In brief , technology has become an essential thing in our life.

Social media

We can't deny that social media plays an important role in our life. A great number of people use social media nowadays. They can easily get news from all over the world. Many jobs now require you to know how to use social media. Some companies use them to advertise jobs and arrange interviews. In this way, they are able to find people for work. People who want jobs can send their CVs online, too. Now you can easily send texts or emails to the people you know everywhere. Smartphones help us to do that. However, many people waste their time using social media. We should be careful when we use social networking site

A story with a moral

I like reading stories very much. Once, an ant was collecting food for the winter. A grasshopper hadn't done any work all week. He sat in the sun and refused to collect food. He refused to think about winter. The ant told him that it was foolish because it was hard to find food in the winter. When the winter came, the ant had found enough food to eat until spring. The grasshopper was very hungry. He remembered the ant's wise words. The moral that we learn from this story is that we should prepare for the future.

An animal that you like

I like animals very much . The animal I like most is the horse. It is a beautiful animal. It is not lazy. It works hard. It runs fast. It was used for transport in the past. The horse is a wonderful animal. Horses are expensive. They need special equipment and health care. Horses have been friends to man for thousands of years. They used to carry things, pull carriages and work on farms. They are also used for sport. We should treat horses kindly because they are not machines. We should look after them because they are so useful.

Sea life

If you dive in the Red Sea, you'll enjoy sea life. There are many kinds of fish that you can't see anywhere in the world. If you dive to the bottom, you will probably see a stingray. Large animals also live in the Red Sea. Green turtles are too long and live for 23 years or more. You can see them walk slowly on the

beach. If you go to Shark Reef at the right time of year, you might see a shark. You can see dolphins. They are fun to swim with. Tourists like going there to dive or snorkel and enjoy seeing sea life. They can take photos there with special cameras.

A visit to

We all agree that going on picnics is very enjoyable. They renew our energy and make our life funny. As for me , I like them very much. Last week , I went to the I got up very early in the morning. I prepared myself for the picnic. I took I went with me We went there by We arrived at ten in the morning. I saw I took a lot of photos. I enjoyed very much.

E mail

To :
From :
Subject :

Hi (Dear)
I'm happy to write this email to you. How are you and your family? I hope you are well. I'd like to tell you about

Best wished
.....



Dialogues & Situations

السؤال الأول والثاني

تعتمد هذه الأسئلة على مهارة تكوين السؤال والوظائف اللغوية

How to make a question

لا بد أولاً أن نعرف أن هناك نوعان من الأسئلة في اللغة الإنجليزية :

١- السؤال بمعنى هل Yes/No question ٢- السؤال بأداة استفهام Wh-question

1 Yes/No question

١- تبدأ إجابة هذا السؤال بـ :

[Yes / No / Of course/ Well / Sure / I'm afraid / Ok]

٢- نحذف Yes / No أو أي من الكلمات السابقة إن وجدت .

٣- تقدم الفعل المساعد أو الفعل الناقص على فاعل الجملة ، ويكون شكل السؤال كالآتي :

.....? فعل أساسي + الفاعل + فعل مساعد

- الأفعال المساعدة هي :

[am / is / are] [was / were] [have / has / had + P.P]

- الأفعال الناقصة هي :

can / could / shall / should / will / would / may / might / must

- إذا كان لا يوجد فعل مساعد أو ناقص (أنظر للفعل فوراً وحدد نوعه) :

- (inf) بدون إضافات ← do

- (v) + s/es/ies ← does

- (v) + d/ed/ied ← did ، غير منتظم

كم أمثلة معلولة :

Hamdy : Can I use your pen ?

Sherif : Sure, you can use my pen.

Ali : Did she go outside ?

Aya : Well! She went outside for a walk.

Ibrahim : Were you playing football ?

Ahmed : No, We were playing chess.

كم لاحظ التحولات الآتية عند تكوين السؤال :

- I / we → you

- your / our → your

- I'm / we're → Are you ?

- I was / we were → Were you..?

2 Wh-question

- يبدأ هذا السؤال بكلمة استفهام (مناسبة) لما تسأل عنه في الجملة ، وكلمات الاستفهام مثل :

What	ما / ماذا (غير العاقل)	How	كيف (للمكان/الوسيلة)
Who	من (للفاعل العاقل)	How many	كم عدد (للمعدود)
Whom	من (للمفعول العاقل)	How much	كم كمية / ثمن
When	متى (للوقت)	How often	كم عدد المرات
Where	أين (للمكان)	How far	كم بعد المسافة
Why	لماذا (للسبب)	How long	كم مدة / طول
Whose	ملك من (للملكية)	How tall	كم طول
Which	أيهما (للتخيير)	How fast	كم سرعة
What time	ما الوقت (للساعة)	How high	كم ارتفاع
What size	ما مقياس	How wide	كم اتساع
What colour	ما لون	How deep	كم عمق
What kind	ما نوع	How heavy	كم وزن / ثقل

كم ويكون شكل السؤال كالآتي :

..? فعل أساسي + فاعل + فعل مساعد + أداة استفهام

كم أمثلة معلولة :

Hamdy : How long have you been watching TV ?

Sherif : I have been watching TV for 3 hours.

Functions Box



- Buying / Booking a train ticket

شراء / حجز تذكرة قطار

١- لطلب حجز تذكرة قطار نستخدم :

1- Can I book a (single / return) ticket to (اسم مدينة) , please?

Ex. - Can I book a return ticket to Alexandria, please?

- Sure. / Certainly. بالتأكيد

٢- للاستفسار عن درجة القطار المفضلة نستخدم :

2- Would you like first or second class?

EX. - Would you like first class or economy?

- I'd like first class.

٣- لمعرفة المدة التي يستغرقها القطار نستخدم :

3- How long does (نوع القطار) take?

EX. - How long does the express train take?

- It takes two hours to reach its destination.

٤- للسؤال عن ثمن / سعر التذكرة نستخدم :

4- How much is (نوع التذكرة) , please?

EX. - How much is the single ticket, please?

- It's twenty nine pounds.

٥- لمعرفة الوصيف الذي يتحرك منه القطار نستخدم :

5- Could you tell me which platform (نوع القطار) leaves from?

EX. - Could you tell me which platform the stopping train leaves from?

- It leaves from platform 2.

1- A tourist asks you where he can buy a train ticket to Alexandria.

2- You want to book a return ticket to Zagazig.

3- Someone asks you, "What time does the train to Giza leave?"

4- You want to know the price of a ticket to Giza.

- Expressing past recommendations

التعبير عن توصيات في الماضي

١- أعتقد أنه كان ينبغي أن + P.P. I think you should have + P.P.

Ex. - I think you should have tried the pizza last night.

٢- كان ينبغي عليك ألا + P.P. You shouldn't have + P.P.

EX. - You shouldn't have drunk so much coffee yesterday.

- Explaining a choice in the past :

إيضاح اختيار (شيء ما) في الماضي

١- حقاً لا أريد أن + P.P. I really didn't want to + P.P.

EX. - I really didn't want to try cigarettes. It's not healthy.

٢- لست مهتماً ، شكراً . I wasn't interested, thanks

- Expressing regret in the past :

التعبير عن الندم (فعل شيء ما) في الماضي

١- حقاً كان لا ينبغي علي أن + P.P. I really shouldn't have + P.P.

EX. - I really shouldn't have tried that cigarette because it's

very dangerous.

1- Your friend put more sugar in your tea. You know that it wasn't healthy.

2- You blame yourself for not revising for your exam.

3- Your friend tried a cigarette last night.

4- Someone wants you to try something you don't like. Refuse politely.

5- Your friend wanted to persuade you to try drugs.



Making opinions stronger :

أبداء الرأي بقوة

لإعطاء قوة وتأكيد على الآراء نستخدم إحدى الكلمات التالية قبل الصفة:

إلى حد ما / *extremely* للغاية / *very* جداً / *really* حقاً / *quite* / *really* حقاً

- ☞ Cairo is extremely crowded.
- ☞ The match is really exciting.
- ☞ Giza is a very big City.
- ☞ I don't mind pizza. I'm quite interested in it.

- 1- Your friend asks you about your opinion of the technical schools.
- 2- You admire Mohamed Salah very much. Express this stronger.
- 3- Someone said that England is cold country. Express this stronger.
- 4- You've just finished the hardest test you have ever done. Your mother asks you how the test was.

Asking polite questions :

توجيه الأسئلة بطريقة مهذبة

☞ Could you please explain to me why

هل من الممكن أن توضح لي لماذا ؟

Ex : - Could you please explain to me why I can't feel the earth turn?

- Could you please explain to me why there isn't life on the others planets?

☞ I wonder if you could tell me

أستأسل لو بالإمكان أن تخبرني ..

Ex: - I wonder if you could tell me what a star is made of.

- I wonder if you could tell me how many moons turn around Jupiter.

☞ I'd like to know if

أود أن أعرف إذا

Ex: - I'd like to know if you like your job.

- I'd like to know if the sun is a star or a planet.

☞ Do you think we could

هل تعتقد أننا يمكننا ؟

Ex: - Do you think we could come and see the observatory one day?

- Do you think we could travel and visit Mars one day?

- 1- You want to know why you can't feel the earth turn. Ask your teacher.
- 2- You want to know if your friend likes his job.
- 3- You want your teacher to explain something you don't know.
- 4- You want to know whether you could visit Rofida on Friday.
- 5- You want to know how many moons turn around Mars. Ask your teacher.
- 6- You want to ask an astronomer when he started working at the observatory.
- 7- You want your friend to tell you what clouds are made of.

Asking for opinions:

طلب الرأي

☞ What do you think of ...?

ما رأيك في ... / ماذا تعتقد من ... ؟

Ex : - What do you think of the sphinx ?

- What do you think of the new Suez canal ?

☞ How do you feel about ...?

ما هو شعورك تجاه ... ؟

Ex: - How do you feel about the revolution of 25th Jan, 2011 ?

- How do you feel about the new dam in Ethiopia ?

☞ Do you agree? (جملة رأيك)

هل تتفق مع ذلك ؟

Ex: - Salah is the best footballer in Egypt. Do you agree ?

- Egypt was a great country in the past. Do you agree ?

Expressing agreement:

لتعبير عن الموافقة في الرأي

☞ That's (exactly) how I feel.

هذا ما أشعر به تماماً

☞ You have a point there.

هذا ما أشعر به تماماً

☞ I agree with you.

أتفق معك في الرأي.

☞ I couldn't agree with you more. = I totally agree with you.

Expressing disagreement

لتعبير عن عدم الإتفاق في الرأي

☞ I'm afraid I (totally) disagree.

أخشى أن لا أوافق تماماً

☞ I feel (completely) the opposite.

أشعر (تماماً) بعكس ذلك

Giving Opinion :

أعطاء الرأي

☞ In my opinion, Mr. Waleed is wonderful.

من رأيي

☞ I think that Egypt will be a great country in 2030.

أعتقد أن ..

- 1- You tell your friend that the hotel you all stayed in was very nice. You want to know if he/she thinks the same.
- 2- You see a photo of a modern museum. Your friend says that he/ she doesn't like it, but you like it very much.
- 3- There's a new café in your area. You want to know what your friend thinks about it.
- 4- Your friend says that the test you both did was very easy. You express your opinion.
- 5- You think that this lesson is very interesting. You want to know what your friend thinks of it.

Encouraging people to continue speaking:

تشجيع الناس على الإستمرار في الحديث

☞ - Great! What else does it say?

عظيم ! ماذا تقول أيضاً ؟

☞ - Really? Go on.

حقاً ؟ استمر .

☞ - How wonderful! Tell me more.

يا له من شيء رائع ! أخبرني المزيد .

☞ - Then what happened?

ثم ماذا حدث ؟

☞ - What happened after that?

ماذا حدث بعد ذلك ؟

- 1- A friend tells you that his brother is studying computer programming. Ask for more information.
- 2- Your friend reads only the first sentence of a long text message, then stops reading. Encourage him to continue speaking.
- 3- A friend starts to read you a new story. You want to hear more.
- 4- A friend starts reading a nice poem. Encourage him tell you more.
- 5- Your mother told you a part of a story and stopped. You want her to complete it.
- 6- Your father read a headline on a newspaper. You want to know more.



- Responding to news

الاستجابة لسماع الأخبار

١- عند سماع الأخبار السارة / الجيدة / المدهشة :

- ☞ How wonderful ! يا له من شيء رائع
- ☞ I'm very happy to hear that ! أنا سعيد جداً لسماع ذلك
- ☞ Really ? I can't believe it ! حقاً ، لا أستطيع أن أصدق ذلك

٢- عند سماع الأخبار السيئة :

- ☞ Oh dear! وأسفاه
- ☞ Oh no! I'm sorry to hear that! ياه! حزين لسماع ذلك
- ☞ How terrible ! يا له من شيء فظيع !

- 1- Your friend's uncle died.
- 2- Your favourite football player scored a good goal.
- 3- Your friend's sister has just had a baby.
- 4- Your little brother has lost his bicycle.
- 5- Your friend has won an important competition.
- 6- You heard that your friend's mother is in hospital.
- 7- Ali says that he lost his new phone.
- 8- Your friend tells you that he is going to marry.
- 9- The Egyptian national team has reached the World Football Cup in Russia.

- Giving dates you are not sure of

إعطاء التواريخ عند عدم التأكد

- 1- lived about + اسم الشيء / الحدث + تاريخ / رقم
☞ Dinosaurs lived about 65 million years ago.
- 2- first lived maybe + اسم الشيء / الحدث + تاريخ / رقم
☞ We think that people first lived maybe 250,000 years ago.
- 3- [that/who] lived almost + اسم الشيء / الحدث + تاريخ / رقم
☞ I'm going to talk to you about some people who lived almost 8,000 years ago.
- 4- In around + سنة + اسم الشيء / الحدث
☞ In around 8,000 BCE, people began farming in Africa.

- 1- A friend asks you when the first car was made.
- 2- Your cousin asks you when your school was built.
- 3- Your teacher asks you for the age of the oldest part of Cairo.
- 4- A friend asks you when the Pyramids were built.
- 5- You are asked when dinosaurs lived. You're not sure.
- 6- Your teacher asked you when people started farming. You're not sure.
- 7- A friend asked you when the Stone Age was. You're not sure.
- 8- A friend asks you when your grandfather was born. You're not sure.

- Showing relief

التعبير عن الارتياح

- ☞ Phew ! تعبير يستخدم كرد فعل عند زوال خطر أو الارتياح من عمل شيء .
- ☞ What a relief ! يا لها من راحة !
- ☞ Thank goodness for that ! حمداً لله على هذا !

- Showing excitement

التعبير عن الشعور بالإثارة

- ☞ Great ! I can't wait ! عظيم ! لا أستطيع أن أنتظر !
- ☞ I'm looking forward to that ! أتطلع إلى ذلك !

- 1- Your father tells you that you can go to the beach tomorrow.
- 2- You thought you did badly in an exam, but you did well.
- 3- Your Grandmother tells you that your friends can come to the family party.
- 4- You have just finished your homework.
- 5- You hear that scientists have found a new medicine for cancer.



Let's Check



- أقرأ الموقف جيداً. أفهم دورك في الموقف وماذا تقول.

- You ask ← أنت تسأل شخص ما - مطلوب منك توجيه سؤال

- You are asked ← أنت تسأل من شخص ما - مطلوب منك الإجابة .

- 1- You have just finished the hardest test that you have ever done. Your mother asks you how the test was.
- 2- You are taking a bus from Cairo to Alexandria. You want to know how long you will spend on the bus.
- 3- You wanted to go to the beach today, but your parents say that it is too windy.
- 4- You visited England in the winter. It was the coldest place that you have been. A friend asks you what the weather was like.
- 5- You want to book a ticket for the train from Cairo to Luxor. You are coming back on Sunday.
- 6- You see a news report about poor people in Asia. You would like to be able to help them.
- 7- You would like to ask a teacher when he started working at the school.



- 8- A friend says he/she thinks that the last lesson was the most interesting that you have had.
.....
.....
- 9- A friend starts to read you an interesting story, but then suddenly stops.
.....
.....
- 10- You would like to ask a teacher to explain why it is colder in the winter than in summer.
.....
.....
- 11- You think this lesson is very interesting. You want to know what your friend thinks of it.
.....
.....
- 12- A friend tells you that he / she had an interesting morning .You want to know more.
.....
.....
- 13- Your friend asks you when your father was born. You aren't sure, but you give an answer.
.....
.....
- 14- You hear that a tourist was lost in the desert, but that he has just been found.
.....
.....
- 15- You hear that scientists have found a new medicine which will help many people.
.....
.....
- 16- Your parents say that they are taking you to the beach tomorrow. You are very excited.
.....
.....
- 17- You see people leaving rubbish on a beach. You want to know why they do this.
.....
.....
- 18- A friend tells you that you have won a prize. You are very surprised.
.....
.....

Exercise on Dialogues

1 Supply the following dialogue :

A man is buying a ticket at a train station.

- Man : Good morning. (1) ?
Assistant : To Luxor? Of course. (2) ?
Man : A return, please. I'm coming back on Tuesday.
Assistant : That's LE100. The next train leaves in 30 minutes.
Man : (3) ?
Assistant : The train leaves from platform 2.
Man : (4)

- 1- I'd like to book a ticket to Luxor, please.
2- Would you like a single or a return?
3- Could you tell me which platform the train leaves from?
4- Thank you very much.

1 Supply the following dialogue :

Nevine and Lamia are at the ticket office of a museum.

- Assistant : Unfortunately, the museum is closed today.
Nevine : Oh no. (1) ! I didn't know that.
Assistant : Didn't you look at the website? It has all the times there.
Lamia : I'll look next time. (2) ?
Assistant : You can come any other day, but I don't recommend Saturday.
Lamia : (3) ?
Assistant : Because it is difficult to see things since there are so many people!
Lamia : (4)
Assistant : Tomorrow is perfect.

- 1- What a pity!
2- When can we visit the museum?
3- Why shouldn't we visit on Saturday?
4- Perhaps we can come tomorrow.

1 Supply the following dialogue :

Some students are asking a scientist about space

- Noha : (1) ?
Scientist : Yes, of course. The earth turns at about 1,670 kilometres an hour
Ola : (2)
Scientist : No, but most of them do.
Noha : What did you ask the scientist, Ola?
Ola : (3)
Maya : There are many things that nobody knows about space. Do you agree?
Scientist : Yes. (4) However, we are trying to learn more!

- 1- Do you think you could tell me how fast the earth turns?
2- I wonder if you could tell me if all planets have moons.
3- I asked the scientist if all planets had moons.
4- I couldn't agree with you more.

1 Supply the following dialogue :

A basketball player is visiting a school

- Teacher : Today, a famous basketball player is visiting our school. This is Captain Tarek (1) ?
Mr. Tarek : Of course. What questions would the students like to ask?
Ali : My friends say that I will never be good at basketball because I'm not very tall. Is that right?
Mr Tarek : (2) You don't have to be tall. When I started playing, I was one of the smallest boys in the class.
Basel : (3) ?
Mr Tarek : I became the best basketball player in the class because I always trained hard.
Basel : Do you think one day I might be as good as you?
Mr. Tarek : (4)

- 1- Could you answer some of the students' questions?
2- I'm afraid. I disagree.
3- What happened after that ?
4- Yes, I think so / You might be.

1 Supply the following dialogue :

Amal and Lamia are talking about a man's journey along the Nile.

- Amal : In the news, it says that a man has walked all the way along the Nile.
Lamia : Yes, I heard about this. It's unusual ! (1) ?
Amal : He did it because he wanted to see if it was possible.
Lamia : I heard that at the beginning of the journey, he was very ill, but (2)
Amal : That's good. (3) ?
Lamia : Yes, he said he would. It will probably be a very interesting journal to read.
Amal : (4)

- 1- Why did he do it?
2- he got better.
3- Is he going to write about his journey himself?
4- I couldn't agree with you more.



1 Supply the following dialogue :

Fawzy and Mazin are speaking about a dangerous hobby.

Fawzy : Look at this photograph in the magazine: A man is standing on top of a very tall building.

Mazin : Really? (1)

Fawzy : The magazine says it's his hobby.

Mazin : (2)

Fawzy : I couldn't agree with you more. The police should stop him.

Mazin : (3)

Fawzy : It also says that the police arrested him.

Mazin : (4)

1- Why is he doing that?

2- He shouldn't do that/be there. It's dangerous.

3- What else does it say?

4- Oh dear.



Let's Check



1 Supply the following dialogue :

A tourist is booking a ticket

Tourist : Good morning. I'd like a ticket to Luxor, please.

Assistant : (1)

Tourist : I'd like a return, please. What time is the next train?

Assistant : There's a stopping train in twenty minutes and an express train in two hours' time.

Tourist : (2)

Assistant : It takes 30 minutes longer than the express train.

Tourist : I don't want to wait for two hours, so I'll take the stopping train. How much is that, please?

Assistant : (3)

Tourist : Here you are. Could you tell me which platform the train leaves from?

Assistant : Of course. (4)

1 Supply the following dialogue :

Passenger : I'd like a single ticket to Port Said, please. (1)

Assistant : There's an express train in half an hour.

Passenger : (2)

Assistant : It's LE 20 in economy class.

Passenger : How long does it take?

Assistant : (3)

Passenger : Thanks. Could you tell me which platform the train leaves from?

Assistant : Platform 3. (4)

1 Supply the following dialogue :

Ayman and Yara will go to the park.

Ayman : Would you like to go to the park on Friday, Yara?

Yara : I'd love to. But I can't.

Ayman : (1)

Yara : Because (2)

Ayman : When will you come from your uncle's farm?

Yara : (3) at six o'clock.

Ayman : (4)

Yara : Ok! We'll meet at eight o'clock.

1 Supply the following dialogue :

Moaz and Ali are talking about jobs

Moaz : What would you like to be?

Ali : I'd like to be an architect. (1)

Moaz : Of course possible. (2)

Ali : To build dams, bridges, hospitals, and schools.

Moaz : Could you tell me the meaning of the word "psychological"?

Ali : (3)

Moaz : Tell me something that I can do with my brain.

Ali : (4)

1 Supply the following dialogue :

Akram and Hassan are talking on the phone.

Akram: Hello ! Hassan, what are you doing now?

Hassan: Hello ! Akram. (1)

Akram : Final exam! Why are you revising from now?

Hassan: (2)

Akram: But we have much time. It's at the end of December.

Hassan: I understand. (3)

Akram : Good idea. (4)

Hassan: We can start with Arabic.

1 Supply the following dialogue :

Ali is asking Hany about the sun

Ali : Good morning, Hany. Can I ask you some questions?

Hany : Of course. (1)

Ali : (2)

Hany : No, it is a star.

Ali : (3)

Hany : It is made of gases.

Ali : Gases! Does it turn round?

Hany : No, (4)

1 Supply the following dialogue :

Sara and Sally are talking about the wonders of the world.

Sara : Hello, Sally. (1)

Sally : Hi Sara. Yes, I think I'm good at history.

Sara : Can you name some wonders of the world ?

Sally : Yes, of course. (2)

Sara : (3)

Sally : The pyramids are more than 4000 years old.

Sara : And where is the Taj Mahal?

Sally : (4)

1 Supply the following dialogue :

Yasmin asks Heba about her new pen friend.

Yasmin : I heard you've got a new pen friend. Where is she from ?

Heba : She comes from India.

Yasmin : (1)

Heba : Her English is quite perfect. Her mother is British. (2)

Yasmin : Oh! She's the same age as you. And what does she do in her free time?

Heba : (3)

Yasmin : Wonderful I like computer games, too.

(4)

Heba : I communicate with her through the internet.

1 Supply the following dialogue :

Ahmed is taking with Ali about the Egyptian monuments

Ahmed : What do you think of the Great Pyramid?
Is it amazing?

Ali : (1) It is very old It's very beautiful, too.

Ahmed : What about the Bibliotheca Alexandria?

Ali : (2)

Ahmed : (3)

Ali : Yes, It has museums inside as well as the library.

Ahmed : (4)

Ali : Yes, I visited it many times before.



1 Supply the following dialogue :

Mahmoud and his father are talking about computers and smartphones.

Mahmoud : Hi father. Would you buy me a computer, Dad?
 Father : Hi Mahmoud. (1)?
 Mahmoud : I need it to do some work on the internet.
 Father : Do you know how to use the internet?
 Mahmoud : (2)
 We use computers at school.
 Father : What (3)?
 Mahmoud : Great. I think a smartphone is more useful than a computer.
 Father : Tomorrow, (4)

1 Supply the following dialogue :

"Hady and Shrief are talking about a report on internet scams."

Hady : I have read a report on internet scams.
 Shrief : (1) ?
 Hady : It said that many internet users get internet scams.
 Shrief : (2)?
 Hady : Because they open the e-mails they get from strangers.
 Shrief : So, should we stop using the internet?
 Hady : (3)
 Shrief : What should we do to protect ourselves from strangers?
 Hady : (4)
 Shrief : That's right. We shouldn't say information about our lives to people we don't know

1 Supply the following dialogue :

Leila and Magda are taking about a story in the newspaper

Leila : There is a story in the newspaper about a scam on social media.
 Magda : (1)
 Leila : A robber found out the name and address of a rich man.
 Magda : (2) ?
 Leila : He waited for the rich man to go away on business.
 Magda : (3) ? Go on.
 Leila : He went to his house and tried to take his money.
 What do you think happened then?
 Magda : I think (4)

1 Supply the following dialogue :

Ahmed broke his beautiful watch!

Ahmed : My uncle gave me a new watch for my birthday.
 Medhat : (1) !
 Ahmed : Yes, but I was foolish. (2)
 while I was playing football.
 Medhat : Oh no! How terrible! (3) ?
 Ahmed : He was very kind. He repaired it for me.
 Medhat : (4)?
 Ahmed : It is a bit slow now.
 Medhat : Oh dear ! It's a beautiful watch.

1 Supply the following dialogue :

Ahmed is speaking to Ali about an accident.

Ahmed : It's very nice to meet you. Where were you?
 Ali : I was at the hospital. (1)
 Ahmed : Your brother! What bad news!
 (2)?
 Ali : No, it is not serious.
 Ahmed : (3) ?
 Ali : No, he wasn't driving.
 Ahmed : I hope he will get better soon.
 Ali : (4)

1 Supply the following dialogue :

Omar and Habiba are talking about hippos

Omar : Yesterday, we learnt about hippos at school.
 Habiba : Really? (1) ?
 Omar : Hippos live in Africa.
 Habiba : How long do they sleep a day?
 Omar : (2)
 Habiba : How much do you think they weigh?
 Omar : (3)
 Habiba : (4) ?
 Omar : They eat about 35 kilos of grass a day.

1 Supply the following dialogue :

Amal and Lamia are talking about a man's journey along the Nile.

Lamia : (1) ?
 Amal : In the news, it says that a man has walked all the way along the Nile.
 Lamia : Yes, I heard about this. It's unusual!
 (2) ?
 Amal : He did it because he wanted to see if it was possible.
 Lamia : I heard that at the beginning of the journey, he was very ill, but (3)
 Amal : That's good. Is he going to write about his journey himself?
 Lamia : Yes, It will probably be very interesting to read.
 Ali : (4)

1 Supply the following dialogue :

Ahmed and Hamza are talking about Ras Mohamed national park

Ahmed: Have you ever been to Ras Mohamed national park?
 Hamza : (1)
 Ahmed : Is the Red Sea near there?
 Hamza : (2)
 Ahmed : (3) ?
 Hamza : I would like to go diving every day.
 Ahmed : (4)?
 Hamza : I could see the coral at the bottom of the sea.

1 Supply the following dialogue :

Hala and Marwa are talking about a school trip to the Red Sea

Hala : Hi. Marwa. Where were you last week ?
 Marwa : Hi, Hala. (1)
 Hala : The Red Sea! (2)
 Marwa : (3) ?
 Hala : We went with our school teachers.
 Marwa : (4) ?
 Hala : We went on a dive and saw different kinds of fish.
 Marwa : It's a fantastic trip !

1 Supply the following dialogue :

Sarah and Maha are talking about sea animals.

Sarah : Have you ever visited the Red Sea?
 Maha : Yes. (1) ?
 Sarah : Yes, I know that. The Red Sea is one of the warmest seas in the world.
 Maha : Did you see any sea animals there ?
 Sarah : (2)
 Maha : (3) ?
 Sarah : There are more than 40 kinds of sharks. Why do drivers need to be careful of fire coral.
 Maha : (4)



Reading Comprehension

السؤال الثالث

يعتمد سؤال القطعة على مهارة القراءة والفهم عند القطعة، وغالباً ما تأتي (قطعة الفهم) من خارج كتاب الطالب ولكن الكلمات مفهومة وفي حدود المبروس إذا وجدت كلمات غريبة (حاول استنتاج المعنى من السياق).

3 Read the following , then answer the questions :

Hi Ragab,

I am very sorry that I didn't come to your house yesterday. I'll tell you why. I left home to catch the bus at four o'clock. The bus broke down and did not arrive, so I waited for the next one, which was at half past four. The bus arrived, but before I got on the bus, an old man came out of a shop. He was carrying some heavy bags. The bus driver told me to help him with his bags. He thought that the man wanted to get on the bus. I offered to help him, but he asked me to carry the bags to his car. I carried his bags and put them in his car boot. I did not catch the bus at half past four. I was too late to go to your house so I didn't wait for the five o'clock bus. I was not happy when I got home, but my father told me that I was kind to help the old man.

Best wishes

Taha

A) Answer the following questions :

- 1- Why didn't Taha catch the bus at four o'clock?
- 2- Why do you think that the bus driver did not wait for Taha?
- 3- Why was Taha not happy when he went home?

B) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d :

4- What does the underlined word "one" refer to?

- a) Ragab's house
- b) Taha's house
- c) the next bus
- d) the bus at five o'clock

5- What do you think the word "boot" means?

- a) a space for bags in a car
- b) a kind of boat
- c) a kind of car
- d) a place to keep cars

- 1- Because the bus broke down and did not arrive.
- 2- Because Taha spent a long time helping the old man with his bags.
- 3- Because it was too late to go to Ragab's house.
- 4- C
- 5- A

3 Read the following , then answer the questions :

In the last few years, I have travelled on some of the world's longest train journeys. First, I went on the longest train journey in the world. Taking nearly a week, it goes from Moscow to the east of Russia. My mother thought that I would be bored, but I loved it. Then a friend advised me to take the train from Shanghai to Lhasa in China. It takes about two days. People warned me that the train goes incredibly high into the mountains and it can be difficult to breathe, but I had no problems. Finally, I travelled in Australia from Perth to Sydney. Taking the world's straightest railway for four days was unforgettable. I travelled on my own. However, I have encouraged some of my friends to come with me next time.

A) Answer the following questions :

- 1- How long is the world's longest train journey?
- 2- Why do you think that his mother thought he would be bored?
- 3- What does the underlined word "it" refer to?

B) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d :

4- What do you think the word "unforgettable" means?

- a) easy to remember
- b) easy to forget
- c) boring
- d) not nice

5- This passage is about

- a) the journey from Moscow to the east of Russia
- b) train journeys
- c) the trouble with travelling
- d) the journey in Australia

- 1- It takes nearly a week.
- 2- Because it is a very long journey and there might not be very much to do on the train.
- 3- The train from Shanghai to Lhasa.
- 4- A
- 5- B

3 Read the following , then answer the questions :

Mars has been studied for hundreds of years. Astronomers say that it is the planet which is most like the earth. A day on Mars is nearly the same as it is on earth. It lasts for 24 hours and 39 minutes. However, a year lasts for one year and 320 days. If you looked at Mars through a telescope, you might see a very big mountain. It is more than 20 kilometres high. That is three times as big as Everest! Scientists say that if you went to Mars, you might find water under the surface. However, living on Mars would not be easy. In summer, the temperature is usually minus 5°C and in winter it can be minus 82°C!

A) Answer the following questions :

1- What is the main idea of this passage?

2- What do scientists think might be on the planet Mars that people could use?

3- Can you think of three reasons why it would not be possible to live on Mars?

B) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d :

4- What does the underlined word "it" refer to?

- a) Mars
- b) a day on Mars
- c) a year on earth
- d) a year on Mars

5- What do you think that the word "surface" means?

- a) the sea
- b) the clouds
- c) the top of the ground
- d) the biggest rivers

- 1- It gives information about the planet Mars.
- 2- They think that there might be water.
- 3- It is very cold in winter and very hot in summer. There might not be any water. There is probably no air to breathe.
- 4- B
- 5- C

3 Read the following , then answer the questions :

A tourist has been found after spending five days in the desert. He went for a walk and must have got lost. He was delighted when a farmer found him. The farmer gave him water and told him that he should have taken a phone and lots of water into the desert. Then the farmer took him to a hospital. When he got there, a doctor advised him to sleep and drink lots of water, but said that he was not hurt. We interviewed the tourist when he got home. He asked us to thank the farmer and the doctors. He said that if he went to the desert again, he would be much more careful.

A) Answer the following questions :

1- What happened to the tourist when he went for a walk?

2- Why do you think the farmer said that he should have taken a phone?

3- What did the doctor say that the tourist should do?

B) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d :

4- What do you think the word "delighted" means?

- a) very sad
- b) very thirsty
- c) very happy
- d) very ill

5- What does the underlined word "there" refer to?

- a) the desert
- b) the farm
- c) the hospital
- d) the man's home

- 1- He must have got lost.
- 2- He should have taken a phone because then he could call someone if he had problems.
- 3- The doctor advised him to sleep and drink lots of water.
- 4- C
- 5- C



3 Read the following , then answer the questions :

If you go to some places in Asia, you might see some amazing snakes which can fly! Scientists have asked why they do this. The answer is that it is easier for the snakes to travel this way because they live in an area full of tall trees. If they didn't fly, they would have to go down one tree and then climb up the next one. It is much easier and quicker for them to jump from one tree and fly to the next. The snakes can fly about 24 metres at ten metres a second. How do they do this? Scientists now know that the snakes put their bodies in the shape of an S and move very slowly. If the scientists hadn't used digital cameras to film them in slow motion, we might never have known this.

A) Answer the following questions :

- 1- What is unusual about some of the snakes in Asia?
.....
- 2- Why don't the snakes climb down one tree and climb up the next?
.....
- 3- Why do you think that the scientists studied the snakes?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d :

- 4- The expression in slow motion means watching something
a) more slowly than usual b) faster than usual
c) very carefully d) in a laboratory
- 5- What does the underlined word "this" refer to?
a) why snakes fly b) where snakes live
c) what snakes eat d) how snakes fly

- 1- They can fly.
- 2- Because it is quicker for them to fly.
- 3- Because the snakes are unusual, and because the scientists wanted to find out how they could fly.
- 4- A 5- D

3 Read the following , then answer the questions :

Hi Osama,

You told me to ask my father what problems he had had in his life. He said that when he was 20, he had an accident in the desert when he had driven all night. When he was 24, someone took all his money when he travelled to London. If he hadn't travelled to Brazil when he was 30, he wouldn't have been bitten by a snake and spent a day in hospital! So I asked him if he wished he hadn't done these things.

"No, I don't regret anything!" he said. "Remember that it is not what you do that you regret, but what you don't do." I will remember that advice. Tell me what your father says!

Best wishes,
Karim.

A) Answer the following questions :

- 1- Where did Karim's father have an accident?
.....
- 2- Did many good or many bad things happen to his father?
.....
- 3- Do you agree with his father's advice? Why? / Why not?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d :

- 4- What do you think the word bitten means?
a. cut into by teeth b. followed
c. frightened d. hit
- 5- What do the underlined words "these things" refer to?
a. his travelling b. boring events
c. different places d. hospitals

- 1- He had an accident when he was in the desert.
- 2- Many bad things happened to him.
- 3- Suggested: Yes, because it is best to try doing things even if they are not always successful.
- 4- A 5- A

3 Read the following , then answer the questions :

Some people become addicted to using social networking sites. At first, they use them just to send messages to their friends and to find out what their friends are doing. However, some people need to check their social networking sites all the time. If they do not check them, they begin to worry or to feel unhappy.

The best way to help these people is to suggest that they only use social networking sites for about half an hour. Suggest that they phone their friends instead of sending them messages. Encourage them to play a sport or make something instead of looking at their mobile phones!

A) Answer the following questions :

- 1- Why do people use social networking sites?
.....
- 2- What does the underlined word "them" refer to?
.....
- 3- What is the best way to help people who become addicted to use social networking sites?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d :

- 4- If people don't check their social networking sites, they begin to
a- feel happy b- worry
c- feel ill d- be pleased
- 5- People should use social networking sites only for about..
a- 3 hours b- 4 hours
c- hours d- half an hour

3 Read the following , then answer the questions :

Last week, our teacher told us to research information about airports. He advised us to use the Egyptian Knowledge Bank to find out information. In the next lesson, Omar told us about Marsa Alam International Airport. He told us that it might have been difficult for tourists to get to the Red Sea before the airport was built. Today, the airport is open for 24 hours a day and every hour 1, 200 passengers can travel through it. Then Haytham told us about Osaka Airport in Japan. Because it was next to many buildings, the old Osaka Airport could not grow. In the 1980s, Japan encouraged architects to plan a new airport at sea. Building a new island for the airport must have been very difficult. When it opened in 1994, the airport was the most expensive building project ever!

The teacher then asked me to talk about Barra Airport. This airport is on a small island in the north of Britain, where planes land on a beach. I told the class that tourists often walked on the beach, so people warn them to be careful when planes are going to land! Next week, the students in our class are giving a talk about railway stations. I think that this will be interesting!

A) Answer the following questions :

- 1- How many passengers can Marsa Alam International Airport take?
.....
- 2- Why did Japan decide to build a new airport?
.....
- 3- Why is Barra Airport unusual ?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d :

- 4- The new Osaka Airport was opened in
a- 1200 b- 1994
c- 2010 d- 2024
- 5- The tourist often walked on the beach in Barra must be ...
a- happy b- careful
c- proud d- expensive



3 Read the following , then answer the questions :

Today, only about ten percent of Egyptians keep their money in a bank. Most people buy things using cash. The people who buy the most things are aged 18 to 24 and they spend the most money on electronics, air tickets, going out and clothes. Some businesses in Egypt use the internet to sell things. Egypt is the 12th best place in the world for companies to invest in online businesses. People will probably buy many more things online in the future. Egypt has the highest number of internet users in the Arab world. What people buy online will probably increase by 300 percent in the next few years. That is because more and more people have smartphones, and because the government continues to invest in technology.

A) Answer the following questions :

1- What do you think the word cash means?

2- If you invest money, do you give money to something, or take money from someone?

3- Why do you think that there will be more online businesses in the future?

B) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d :

4- The percentage of people in Egypt do not keep their money in a bank is

- a) 90 b) 10
c) 300 d) 12

5- The people like to spend their money on aged

- a) 100 to 300 b) 10 to 12
c) 18 to 24 d) 12 to 15

3 Read the following , then answer the questions :

It was just before sunrise when the plane landed. The three cousins got off and in an hour, they were out of the airport with their many suitcases. Three years before, business had been so bad that they left their village in search for better level. They spent one year in Libya and then left for Kuwait. They had much money enough to make them decide to go back to their village, about three hundred miles from Cairo, by taxi not by train though it would cost them much more money. The taxi driver decided to take for himself all their things. At noon and at a lonely place on the road, he stopped his car pretending that the engine was in need for cooling. They got off and all of them sat down under a tree to have a light meal.

After a short time, they rose to restart their journey but the taxi driver said the car was in need for a push. The three passengers went behind the taxi to push it forward. Suddenly, the taxi driver ran off at full speed leaving the three cousins behind. It was such a surprise that none of them thought of taking down the car number.

A) Answer the following questions :

1- Why did the three men decide to take a taxi?

2- What kind of people was the taxi driver?

3- How long did the three cousins stay in Kuwait?

B) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d :

4- The plane was coming from

- a. Libya b. Egypt c. Kuwait d. The Sudan

5- The cousins left the airport

- a. before sunrise b. after sunrise
c. at noon d. in the evening

3 Read the following , then answer the questions :

Dolphins are marine animals that are related to whales and porpoises. A marine animal is one that lives in the water. Dolphins are found all over the world in oceans, rivers and marshes. Dolphins are meat eaters; they feed on fish and other marine life. They often swim together in groups and they have good eyesight and good hearing but do not have a sense of smell. Dolphins come in different sizes. Some are smaller than the average person, but others, such as the orca, can be 30 feet long or more than five times than the average person. Dolphins are very intelligent and communicate with each other using clicks and whistles. All dolphins are good swimmers and funny swimmers, too. If you go near the seashores, you might see dolphins playing and swimming happily there.

A) Answer the following questions :

1- Where do dolphins live?

2- How do dolphins communicate with each other?

3- Dolphins love to swim in groups. What might this tell you about their nature?

B) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d :

4- Dolphins can't well.

- a) see b) hear
c) smell d) swim

5- The underlined word "there" refers to

- a) oceans b) rivers
c) canals d) seashores

3 Read the following , then answer the questions :

In this report, I am going to write about some common scams on the internet. First of all, be careful when anyone says that something is free on the internet. Why do companies do this? They usually say it is free for a few days, but to get it, they need information about your bank. When the free days have finished, you often find that you start to pay.

Another scam uses computer games. If you get these from the internet, be very careful. Often the software in the games is used to take information from your computer. To conclude this report, I think that we should all realise that there are many scams on the internet. If you are not sure about something, ask an adult.

A) Answer the following questions :

1- What is the main idea of this report?

2- Why should you be careful if something on the internet is free of charge?

3- What does the software in games try to take from your computer?

B) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d :

4- What do you think a common means?

- a- successful b- happening often
c- not successful d- funny

5- The underlined word "these" refers to

- a- scams b- computer games
c- money d- information









Black Beauty






السؤال الرابع

By : Anna Sewell (1820 – 1878)

يجب فهم شخصيات القصة للتوصيل، عبر بأسلوبك وفهمك عن السؤال، واستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط، خاصة أسئلة التفكير النقدي (Critical Thinking)

الشخصيات Characters

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Earl Smythe 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1- He was a rich man . 2- He bought Black Beauty from Squire Gordon. 3- After the fall, He sold Beauty to a man in Bath. 4- He sent Beauty on a train.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lady Smythe 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1- She was Earl Smythe's wife. 2- She loved the latest fashion. 3- The latest fashion for horses was reins 4- Ginger and Beauty hated the reins 5- The reins hurt the horses very much
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lady Anne 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1- She was Earl Symthe's daughter. 2- She liked to ride Beauty around the park with her brother.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • York 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1- He was Earl Symthe's helper. 2- He didn't liked the reins but he couldn't do anything to make Lady Smythe stop loving the latest fashion. 3- He suggested A man in Bath to buy Black Beauty.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A Man in Bath 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1- He was hiring horses for people. 2- Some people were bad drivers. Others were good drivers. 3- One of them admired Black Beauty and suggested it to Mr. Barry. 4- He asked the owner if Mr. Barry could buy Black Beauty.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mr. Barry 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1- He's a businessman. 2- Black Beauty's owner in Bath. 3- He bought it because his doctor advised him to ride a horse to be healthy. 4- His friend who was a farmer advised him to watch his helper when he saw Beauty looked weak and different. 6- His Helper was a thief and Mr. Barry called the police to arrest him. 5- He sold Beauty after the experience. 6- He sent it to the market of horses.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Filcher 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1- He's Mr. Barry helper. 2- He stole Black Beauty's food. 3- He gave the food to his rabbits and then sold them at the market.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Jerry Barker 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1- He's a kind taxi driver in London. 2- He felt Beauty's legs gently and spoke softly to him. 3- He bought it for 24 pounds. 4- He refused an extra pound to go faster to the station. He said that an extra pound wouldn't be useful when the horse became tired and didn't work. 5- He helped the young woman and her son. He took her to the hospital and refused to take the two men. 6- The rich man made him waiting outside in cold. He became ill and his doctor advised him not to be a taxi driver anymore. 7- He was the best owner Beauty ever had. 8- His family were really happy.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Polly 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1- She was Jerry's wife. 2- She gave Beauty good food and water 3- She sent to Mrs. Fowler to find a job to her husband.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Harry • Dolly 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1- They're Jerry's children. 2- Harry was eight. He was hard working. He gave Beauty food and helped his father brush Black Beauty. 3- Dolly was twelve. She was a shy girl. She asked her father if Beauty was a gentle horse.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mr. Grant 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1- He was the owner of taxi business. 2- He studied Beauty as if he wanted to buy him. He said that Beauty would do well for Jerry.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mrs. Fowler 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1- She was a wealthy woman . 2- She had a house in the country. 3- She found a job for Jerry 4- She gave him and his family a cottage to live in.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skinner 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1- He bought Beauty from Jerry. 2- He was a bad taxi driver. 3- He didn't give Beauty enough food to eat. He worked seven days a week. 4- He only cared about the money not his horse. 5- He didn't gave Beauty his breakfast and made him carry a lot of luggage. 6- Beauty fell down he was going to die. 7- Skinner sent Beauty to the market to sell him because the vet said that Beauty needed to rest .
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mr. Thoroughgood 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1- He's an old farmer. 2- He didn't want to buy Beauty at first because he thought that Beauty was old and weak. He could pull a carriage or run faster. 3- The seller said that Beauty was good and just needed good food. 4- He gave Beauty good food and took care of him. In the spring, Beauty became well again and could work. 5- He offered Beauty to word for Miss Blomefield.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Willie 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1- He is Mr. Thoroughgood's grandson. 2- He also wanted to buy Black Beauty because he was handsome.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Miss Blomefield 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1- She lived in the country. 2- She lived with her two sisters. 3- She thought that Beauty couldn't do many things. She noticed that Beauty's knees aren't well.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Joe Green 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1- He became a young man. 2- He recognised Beauty when he saw him. He said that he was the young boy who worked for Squire Gordon.

الشخصيات The horses

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Black Beauty 	The black horse who tells the story.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ginger 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1- Black Beauty's friend, who has had a difficult past. 2- She began to kick at Earlshall park because of the reins. 3- Beauty met her again. She looked so different. She was not strong. She was hit hard by the men to go faster.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lizzie 	A young horse at Earlshall Park.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Captain 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1- The horse who works with Black Beauty, driving taxis. 2- He pulled the carriage in the morning.



Black Beauty



At Earlshall Park

في إيرلشال بارك

1- In what ways was Earlshall Park better than Birtwick Park?

It was bigger and more modern.

2- Why did Lady Smythe use special reins to keep the horses' heads held high?

Because it was the latest fashion.

3- Why was it very difficult for the horses to pull the carriage up a hill?

Because they could not put their heads down when they were wearing the reins.

4- Do you think that Ginger was right to start to kick? Why/ Why not?

Suggested: Yes, because she was very uncomfortable./No. She should have worked hard like Black Beauty.

5- How do we know that York cared about Ginger and Black Beauty?

We know that York cared about them because he was angry that they wore the special reins. He helped them when they were hurt.

6- What was the problem with the reins that Lady Smythe wanted the horses to wear?

They were very uncomfortable and it was difficult to pull a carriage up a hill with them on.

7- How did Ginger and Beauty become hurt?

They fell to the ground and had to be cut from the carriage.

8- Do you think that Beauty was angry with Ginger because he was hurt? Why? / Why not?

Suggested: No because he realised that Ginger only did this because the reins were uncomfortable.

9- Why do you think that Earl Smythe said that he might not get much money for Ginger?

Because Ginger's knees were badly damaged. She also does not always do what her owners want.

10- What happened to Black Beauty and Ginger after Ginger began to kick?

They fell to the ground and had to be cut from the carriage.

11- Why did the Earl decide to sell the horses?

Because they could not pull a carriage any more.

12- Do you think that Black Beauty was angry with Ginger after the accident? Why? / Why not?

Suggested: No. Although the accident damaged his knees, it meant he did not have to pull the carriage with the reins. He understood why she did this and was still friends.



In Bath

في مدينة "باث"

1- Why did Mr Barry's doctor advise him to ride a horse?

Mr. Barry was a businessman who had little exercise. The doctor advised him ride a horse to keep him healthy.

2- What did Filcher do with Black Beauty's food?

He took it home to give to his rabbits.

3- What happened to Black Beauty's food?

Filcher gave it to his animals.

4- Why did Mr Barry sell Black Beauty?

He felt bad after Black Beauty did not have enough to eat and after the police arrested Filcher.

5- Why is it important to look after working animals carefully?

Because they work much better when they are given good food and are looked after well.

6- Do you think Filcher deserved to be arrested? Why?

He wanted to give it to his rabbits so that he could get more money for them at the market. He was not a good man and only thought about himself and his family, not about Beauty.



In London

في مدينة لندن

1- What did Black Beauty find difficult about his first few days in London?

There was a lot of noise and a lot of people and it was difficult for him to find his way between the carriages.

2- How did Jerry describe Black Beauty to his daughter?

He said that he was as gentle as she was.

3- What did Harry and Dolly do to help look after Beauty?

Harry always helped to look after him and Dolly came to see him often.

4- Why do you think that Jerry took Captain to work on Black Beauty's first morning in London?

I think he didn't want Beauty to have a difficult first day.

5- Why do you think that one of the taxi drivers says this to Jerry when he sees Black Beauty for the first time?

He can see that Beauty is a strong, healthy horse. Perhaps he thinks that he is too good to do hard, difficult work.

6- How do we know that Jerry cares about horses?

He does not take the passengers quickly to the station because he always thinks about his horse. He does not want his horses to be tired.

7- Why didn't Jerry go fast for the passengers who wanted to catch a train?

Suggested answer: He did not want Black Beauty to be tired, because then he could not do a good job later in the day.

8- Do you think that people were always happy to have Jerry as a taxi driver? Why? / Why?

He was probably not popular with everyone, because he did not always do what people asked him to do.

9- Why did Black Beauty think that Jerry was the best owner he had had?

Because he gave Black Beauty good food and fresh water, he was kind to him and he was a good driver.

10- How do we know that Jerry was a kind man?

We know that Jerry is kind because he took the woman to hospital when he saw that she needed help.

11- Why did Black Beauty feel sorry for some of the taxi drivers and their horses?

Because they had to work for very long hours to get enough money for their families.

12- How easy do you think it was for people to travel around London at this time?

Suggested: It was probably quite difficult because there were no cars, trains or buses. Only wealthy people could take a taxi or carriage because they were probably expensive.

13- What did Beauty find difficult about living in London?

He thought that there was a lot of noise and a lot of people and that it was difficult to find his way between all the other carriages.

14- Why did Black Beauty stop finding it difficult to pull a taxi in London?

Because he began to trust Jerry.

15- Why do you think that the rich man did not apologise to Jerry when he had to wait for him in the cold?

The rich man probably thought that it was Jerry's job to wait for him. He did not think that this might be difficult for Jerry and Black Beauty.

16- Do you think that the man should pay Jerry for the time he waited outside the house? Why? / Why not?

Yes, he should pay him. If Jerry did not wait, he could take other passengers to places and get more money.



17- Why wasn't Beauty put into a carriage for two days?

Because Jerry was too ill to take him out for work.

18- Why were holidays not always an easy time for taxi drivers?

Because they had a lot of work taking people from house to house.

19- What happened to Jerry when he had to wait outside the house of a rich man?

He became ill because it was very cold.

20- Why do you think that Jerry became ill?

He had to wait outside the house of a rich man and it was very cold.

21- Why did Polly write to Mrs Fowler?

Jerry could not drive taxis any more, so Polly wanted to find work for him.

22- Why do you think that Black Beauty was worried when Jerry found work with Mrs. Fowler?

Because he was becoming old and he knew that he might have more difficult work to do in the future.



مقابلة "جنجر" Meeting "Ginger"

1- Why do you think that each of Ginger's owners paid less money for her?

Because she was becoming weaker and weaker, so she could not work very well.

2- Why did Ginger stop kicking people who weren't good to her?

Because she was not strong enough to kick any more.

3- Why did Black Beauty feel sorry for some of the taxi drivers and their horses?

Because some taxi drivers and their horses have to work very long hours without a rest to get enough money. Some of them had to work for seven days a week.



الدباغ Skinner

1- Who was Skinner and why was he a bad owner?

He was a taxi driver . He was a bad owner because he worked seven days a week and never gave his horses a good rest or enough to eat.

2- Why do you think that Skinner makes Black Beauty work so hard?

He was very poor and had to work hard to get enough money to live. He probably did not think that the health of his horse was important.

3- At the station, do you think that Skinner knew that Black Beauty was too weak to carry the family and their bags? Why? / Why not?

I think that he knew, although he told the girl that Black Beauty was OK. However, he needed to take the family to get more money.

4- Why do you think that Skinner told the girl not to worry after she said that Black Beauty looked too weak to carry their bags?

I think Skinner told the girl not to worry because he didn't want to lose money. He had to work for seven days a week to get enough money, even when his horses were weak or ill.

5- What happened when Black Beauty tried to pull the carriage up a hill?

He fell onto the ground and thought that he was going to die.

6- Why did a vet look at Black Beauty?

A vet looked at Black Beauty after he fell down on the street. He saw that Black Beauty needed food and rest.

7- Why do you think that Black Beauty was sold at the part of the market where the horses were old or ill-looking?

Because Black Beauty had been ill and now he looked old.



السيد ثروجد Mr. Thoroughgood

1- Where did Mr. Thoroughgood take Black Beauty to?

He took him to a large field.

2- What did Mr. Thoroughgood give Beauty every day?

He gave him good food.

3- Who looked after Beauty when Mr. Thoroughgood bought him from the market?

His grandson Willie.

4- How did Black Beauty feel when spring came at Mr. Thoroughgood's field?

He felt strong again.

5- How was Mr. Thoroughgood when he took Black Beauty for a drive?

He was pleased to buy him.



"Joe Green" again جو جرين مرة أخرى

1- Who came to take Beauty to Miss Blomefield's house?

Joe Green.

2- Why didn't Black Beauty recognise Joe Green at first?

Because he was now a tall, strong man.

3- How did Joe Green recognise Black Beauty?

He recognised him from his white foot and white star.

3- How was Beauty's work in Miss Blomefield's home?

It was very easy.

4- How did Joe Green look after Black Beauty at Miss Blomefield's home?

He was very good at looking after him.

5- How long did Beauty live with Miss Blomefield?

For a year.

6- How did Black Beauty's story end?

It end happily and his troubles were over.

7- What was your favourite part of the story?

.....
.....
.....

8- What did you learn from the story?

.....
.....
.....

9- Did you enjoy Black Beauty? Why?

.....
.....
.....





النموذج الأول Story

A- Match column (A) with column (B):

(A)	(B)
1- Black Beauty	a- liked the latest fashion.
2- Ginger	b- was the horse Lady Anne liked to ride.
3- York	c- said, "If they don't tighten the reins more, I will do what they ask me."
4- Lady Smythe	d- was much smaller than Earl Smythe's house at Earls Hall Park.
	e- was Earl Smythe's helper

1- (.....) 2- (.....) 3- (.....) 4- (.....)

B. Answer the following questions:

1- In what ways was Earls Hall Park better than Birtwick Park?

✍

2- Why did Lady Smythe use special reins to keep the horses' heads held high?

✍

3- Why was it very difficult for the horses to pull the carriage up a hill?

✍

4- Do you think that Ginger was right to start to kick? Why / Why not?

✍

5- How do we know that York cared about Ginger and Black Beauty?

✍

النموذج الثاني Story

A- Match column (A) with column (B):

(A)	(B)
1- Black Beauty	a- was accused of stealing the horses' food.
2- Mr Barry	b- suggested buying good food for Black Beauty for a few weeks.
3- Mr Barry's friend	c- said, "If they cannot pull a carriage, we must sell them."
4- Filcher	d- was a rich man who bought Black Beauty.
	e- was taken to a market for horses.

1- (.....) 2- (.....) 3- (.....) 4- (.....)

B. Answer the following questions:

1- What was the problem with the reins that Lady Smythe wanted the horses to wear?

✍

2- How did Ginger and Black Beauty become hurt?

✍

3- Do you think that Black Beauty was angry with Ginger because he was hurt? Why? / Why not?

✍

4- What did Filcher do with Black Beauty's food?

✍

5- Why do you think that Earl Smythe said that he might not get much money for Ginger?

✍

النموذج الثالث Story

A- Match column (A) with column (B):

(A)	(B)
1- Polly	a- believed that a pound wouldn't help if it made the horse tired.
2- Ginger	b- was given food before walking for many kilometres.
3- Jerry	c- was Jerry's wife.
4- Black Beauty	d- wasn't able to run very fast after the fall.
	e- was Jerry's son.

1- (.....) 2- (.....) 3- (.....) 4- (.....)

B. Answer the following questions:

1- How did Jerry describe Beauty to his daughter?

✍

2- Why did Black Beauty stop finding it difficult to pull a taxi in London?

✍

3- Why do you think that Jerry took Captain to work on Black Beauty's first morning in London?

✍

4- Why did Ginger stop kicking people who weren't good to her?

✍

5- How do we know that Jerry was a kind man?

✍

النموذج الرابع Story

A- Match column (A) with column (B):

(A)	(B)
1- Jerry Barker	a- always helped to look after Black Beauty and worked hard.
2- Captain	b- was the best owner and a kind taxi driver.
3- Harry	c- was the horse that went out with the taxi carriage in the morning.
4- Black Beauty	d- examined Black Beauty carefully.
	e- was pleased with his new owner.

1- (.....) 2- (.....) 3- (.....) 4- (.....)

B. Answer the following questions:

1- What did Black Beauty find difficult about his first few days in London?

✍

2- Why did Black Beauty think that Jerry was the best owner he had had?

✍

3- Why did Black Beauty feel sorry for some of the taxi drivers and their horses?

✍

4- Why do you think that each of Ginger's owners paid less money for her?

✍

5- Do you think that people were always happy to have Jerry as a taxi driver? Why? / Why not?

✍



Story النموذج الخامس

A- Match column (A) with column (B):

(A)	(B)
1- The doctor	a- had easier work in the end.
2- Skinner	b- took Black Beauty to a large field to give him good food.
3- Mr Thoroughgood	c- had no problems all his life.
4- Black Beauty	d- was also a taxi driver.
	e- told Jerry that he should stop driving a taxi.

1- (....) 2- (....) 3- (....) 4- (....)

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why were holidays not always an easy time for taxi drivers?
✍
- What happened to Jerry when he had to wait outside the house of a rich man?
✍
- Why did Polly write to Mrs. Fowler?
✍
- Why do you think that Skinner told the girl not to worry after she said that Black Beauty looked too weak to carry their bags?
✍
- Why do you think that Black Beauty was sold at the part of the market where the horses were old or ill-looking?
✍

Story النموذج السادس

A- Match column (A) with column (B):

(A)	(B)
1 Jerry and his family	a- stopped working because the vet said he broke his leg.
2 Black Beauty	b- decided to sell Black Beauty.
3 Joe Green	c- recognised Black Beauty from his white foot and white star.
4 Skinner	d- become healthy again after Mr. Thoroughgood and his grandson looked after him.
	e- moved to a cottage so that they could work for Mrs Fowler.

1- (....) 2- (....) 3- (....) 4- (....)

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why do you think that Jerry became ill?
✍
- Why do you think that Black Beauty was worried when Jerry found work with Mrs. Fowler?
✍
- Who was Skinner and why was he a bad owner?
✍
- What happened when Black Beauty tried to pull the carriage up a hill?
✍
- Why didn't Black Beauty recognise Joe Green at first?
✍

Story النموذج السابع

A- Match column (A) with column (B):

(A)	(B)
1- The two men	a- had a taxi business.
2- Filcher	b- was an old farmer.
3- Mr Thoroughgood	c- deserved to be arrested.
4- Lady Anna	d- got into Jerry's taxi in front of the poor woman.
	e- was Earl Smythe's daughter.

1- (....) 2- (....) 3- (....) 4- (....)

B. Answer the following questions:

- How did Joe Green recognise Black Beauty?
✍
- What did the drivers have to do to get more money for their families?
✍
- What did Mr. Barry do when he knew that his helper was a thief?
✍
- Why do you think Black Beauty was worried to see thin horses at the market?
✍
- How do you know that Jerry was a good owner?
✍

Story النموذج الثامن

A- Match column (A) with column (B):

(A)	(B)
1- Willie	a- decided that the horses' heads should be higher.
2- Polly	b- was Jerry's wife.
3- Jerry	c- was an old farmer.
4- Lady Smythe	d- was Mr. Thoroughgood's grandson.
	e- took the poor woman to the hospital.

1- (....) 2- (....) 3- (....) 4- (....)

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why did the daughter peer at Black Beauty outside the station?
✍
- What did Jerry do to make the two men get out of his taxi?
✍
- How did Beauty feel when he was given less food?
✍
- Do you think that Jerry was a kind man? Why/ Why not?
✍
- Why do you think that most drivers were rough with their horses?
✍

- Good Luck -



Choose the correct

السؤال الخامس

يعتمد هذا السؤال على حفظ كلمات الوحدات وحروف الجر والقواعد أيضاً
سنبدأ بالأسئلة المعتمدة على كلمات الحفظ

Module (4) : Units (10.11 & 12)

- 1- The assistant told us that our was at the front of the train.
a. cart b. carriage c. bus d. car
- 2- Can we a seat on the second class train?
a. buy b. sell c. book d. spend
- 3- If we take the midday bus to Giza, we can to Cairo at 6 o'clock.
a. return b. spend c. take d. send
- 4- Excuse me, is Alexandria the final of this train?
a. place b. destination c. site d. location
- 5- The people who work at the shop have a every day before the shop opens.
a. travel b. meeting c. visit d. destination
- 6- Most people travel in class on planes.
a. economy b. return c. single d. meeting
- 7- Mayar's cousin is going to live in Cairo so she has bought a/an ticket.
a. single b. only c. express d. return
- 8- It's hot today, but the hotel room is cool because it has air
a. communication b. condensation
c. conditioning d. cleaning
- 9- Do you want to catch the stopping train or the train?
a. express b. platform c. carriage d. going
- 10- We love to watch the beautiful from the train's windows.
a. tickets b. journey c. station d. scenery
- 11- We took a to cross from one side of the Nile to the other.
a. train b. bicycle c. ferry d. car
- 12- Yesterday, we the bus at school to go our house.
a. got into b. got off c. got on d. got out of
- 13- Imad's father a taxi and asked the driver to take him to the station.
a. got into b. got off c. got on d. got out of
- 14- Four tourists a car and took some photos of the statues in the park.
a. got into b. got off c. got on d. got out of
- 15- We usually the train ten minutes before it leaves.
a. got into b. got off c. got on d. got out of
- 16- Welcome to Cairo. Please the plane through the doors at the front.
a. got into b. got off c. got on d. got out of
- 17- You should a room early in that hotel because it's usually crowded.
a. break b. buy c. book d. spend
- 18- I enjoy trains because I wake up in a different place.
a. economy b. sleeper c. return d. stopping
- 19- We can't take that train! Its is Alexandria and we're going to Aswan.
a. place b. destination c. journey d. location

- 20- The train leaves from 6.
a. carriage b. station c. stop d. platform
- 21- My father has a very important at work today.
a. travel b. meeting c. match d. minute
- 22- I am going to take the train because it's much faster than the stopping train.
a. sleeper b. going c. express d. single
- 23- Too much smoking can cause lung and heart
a. degrees b. diseases c. debates d. beats
- 24- Don't drink too much coffee, or you'll become to it.
a. invited b. added c. addicted d. belonged
- 25- I had an to fix my leg, and now I can walk again.
a. accident b. event c. operation d. invitation
- 26- Maysa works very hard so I'm sure she'll the exams.
a. provide b. pass c. succeed d. fail
- 27- Osama is coughing all the time. I think he has a problem with his
a. lungs b. legs c. arms d. hearts
- 28- These are very good footballers, so the reason they are losing all their games is: they don't think they are the best.
a. physical b. nervous c. psychological d. mental
- 29- It is very bad to smoke a in a hospital.
a. cigarette b. fire c. light d. match
- 30- Volleyball is a very game: you need to be fit to play it.
a. physical b. nervous c. psychological d. mental
- 31- The little boy was very after his brother broke his toy.
a. angry b. pleased c. happy d. wonderful
- 32- You should never be to people. Always talk nicely.
a. kind b. helpful c. nice d. rude
- 33- I try to be very when I visit my grandparents. I clean their kitchen and sweep the floor.
a. help b. helpful c. helper d. helpless
- 34- The basketball team are very They've won all their games this year.
a. success b. succeed c. successful d. successfully
- 35- This mobile phone is very It can send emails and take photos.
a. use b. useless c. user d. useful
- 36- Please be when you carry those eggs!
a. careful b. careless c. career d. care
- 37- The is always the first to arrive in the office.
a. factory b. manager c. project d. building
- 38- Our school is not a very old
a. site b. view c. building d. location
- 39- Canada is cold in the winter.
a. especially b. special c. specialized d. excellent
- 40- workers often have to wear boots and a helmet.
a. office b. manual c. group d. single
- 41- A checks that you have paid when you go on a bus or train.
a. ticket inspector b. waiter c. manager d. baker
- 42- A washes floors and tidies rooms.
a. waiter b. cleaner c. manager d. teacher



- 43- You ask for a / an when a car or machine breaks down.
a. inspector b. pilot c. manager d. mechanic
- 44- A is an important person in a bank, shop, sports team, etc.
a. teacher b. waiter c. manager d. baker
- 45- A / An repaired the lights in my office.
a. electrician b. mechanic c. engineer d. baker
- 46- After preparatory schools, some students prefer to go to schools.
a. technique b. technician c. technical d. techno
- 47- Students should learn many to use in the world of work.
a. skills b. skulls c. silks d. skates
- 48- My brother is going to be a doctor after he
a. manages b. graduates c. interviews d. encourages

Module (5) : Units (13.14 & 15)

- 1- Earth is one of eight planets in our
a. moon b. solar system c. shooting star d. sun
- 2- is the study of the stars.
a. Biology b. Archeology c. Astronomy d. History
- 3 Hassan is very interested in space and wants to be an
a. artist b. astronomer c. engineer d. electrician
- 4- At night in the desert, you can sometimes see , but they disappear very quickly!
a. moons b. planets c. shooting stars d. suns
- 5- The Science Museum has a of rock from the moon.
a. glass b. cup c. piece d. bag
- 6- In Cairo, it is usually about 14 in January.
a. degrees b. marks c. steps d. clocks
- 7- What is the biggest object in our solar system?
a. The moon b. The sun c. The earth d. The meteorite
- 8- What does the earth do every day? It around the sun.
a. turns b. falls c. freezes d. stops
- 9- What are the stars made of?
a. metal b. plastic c. rocks d. gas
- 10- There are eight of these moving round the sun.
a. moons b. planets c. shooting stars d. meteorites
- 11- If you want to look at stars and planets in our solar system you can go to the
a. laboratory b. observatory c. theatre d. university
- 12- When you something ,you make it easy to understand.
a. explain b. expect c. enter d. except
- 13- The great pyramid at Giza is one of the ancient world
a. stars b. statues c. temples d. wonders
- 14- The dome of the Taj Mahal is made of It's amazing.
a. wood b. metal c. paper d. marble
- 15- is a very hard white, black or pink rock used for building.
a. wood b. metal c. paper d. marble
- 16- is the top of a building that is the shape of half a circle.
a. minaret b. temple c. dome d. fountain
- 17- is something that is built to remind people of an important event or person.
a. monument b. factory c. dome d. instrument

- 18- The Taj Mahal in India was built by the of India to remember his wife.
a. officer b. musician c. engineer d. ruler
- 19- I saw a monument of a mosque that has two tall, beautiful
a. statues b. minarets c. gardens d. fountains
- 20- Is Lake Nasser natural or is it?
a. modern b. traditional c. man-made d. personal
- 21- Baghdad is a big city in
a. Greece b. Iraq c. Egypt d. England
- 22- There is a big where the river goes over a cliff.
a. fall b. waterfall c. water drop d. water cycle
- 23- You can usually find trees and birds at an in the desert.
a. art gallery b. adventure c. oasis d. object
- 24- The teacher asked Hassan to his homework because he did not do it very well.
a. replay b. redo c. reread d. repaint
- 25- Siwa oasis is a / an wonder in Egypt.
a. man-made b. natural c. new d. old
- 26- Look! It says "today's news" in the newspaper. This is a
a. misprint b. misread c. mislead d. mistreat
- 27- I his name and thought he was called Tim instead of Tom.
a. misprint b. misread c. mislead d. mistreat
- 28- It is a good idea to any books that you are studying at school to understand them better.
a. replay b. redo c. reread d. repaint
- 29- Have you read about the latest in computers?
a. advertisement b. arrangement c. development d. payment
- 30- There is an in the newspaper for a new computer game.
a. advertisement b. arrangement c. interview d. payment
- 31- It is a/an that all the manual workers wear boots.
a. advertisement b. development c. requirement d. arrangement
- 32- It is very expensive to something on television.
a. arrange b. advertise c. pay d. develop
- 33- The students have to see the teacher after the class.
a. arranged b. advertised c. paid d. developed
- 34- How much did they the man for repairing your computer?
a. cost b. pay c. buy d. arrange
- 35- Some messages on the internet are not real. They are from people who want to get information from you.
a. screams b. scans c. scams d. skims
- 36- The privacy on social networking sites make sure that only people who you know can see information.
a. scams b. messages c. settings d. sizes
- 37- The Sphinx is a famous that many tourists visit.
a. mountain b. scenery c. monument d. canal
- 38- We saw famous paintings in the art
a. temple b. book c. pyramid d. gallery
- 39- Ramy's bike is broken. How can we it?
a. report b. repair c. make d. explain



- 40- A/An went into the house at night and stole a lot of gold.
a. archaeologist b. reporter c. robber d. sailor
- 41- The websites used by people to communicate are called
a. social media b. messages c. sites d. magazines
- 42- We can use mobile phone to money to or from a bank.
a. arrange b. transfer c. give d. find
- 43- This email asks for my computer password. It must be a
a. score b. skin c. scam d. scan
- 44- The shop is for a new assistant. Perhaps Manal can work there.
a. investing b. writing c. arranging d. advertising

Module (6) : Units (16.17 & 18)

- 1- A story with a moral has a
a. message b. sad ending c. happy ending d. no ending
- 2- If you feel content, you are
a. sad b. angry c. scared d. happy
- 3- If you have enough water, you are
a. thirsty b. not thirsty c. hungry d. not hungry
- 4- It is a good idea to ask a wise person for
a. food b. wonders c. money d. advice
- 5- The farmer saw a lot of that eat his plants.
a. grassland b. grasshoppers c. buffalo grass d. grass court
- 6- Shaimaa did not like the film. She thought it was
a. happy b. exciting c. terrible d. interesting
- 7- Marwan asked to Mustafa's phone so he could call his mother.
a. lend b. give c. borrow d. see
- 8- Robbers are very people. They always want to steal more money.
a. greedy b. bored c. wise d. polite
- 9- I saw a beautiful white..... near the lake.
a. gaze b. goes c. goose d. geese
- 10- Mona was very upset after she lost her necklace.
a. woolen b. golden c. plastic d. wooden
- 11- My grandmother is very She knows how to help most people who have a problem.
a. greedy b. foolish c. wise d. impolite
- 12- My mother wants to keep hens as they eggs which we can eat.
a. lie b. lay c. collect d. pick
- 13- Dinosaurs are animals which have died
a. of b. out c. on d. up
- 14- A meteorite is a rock which comes from
a. rain b. spice c. space d. cloud
- 15- is something which comes from volcanoes.
a. wind b. dust c. cloud d. rain
- 16- If a volcano, you would see smoke and fire.
a. encouraged b. developed c. erupted d. celebrated
- 17- When an animal dies out, you will not it again.
a. live b. see c. breathe d. climb

- 18- The was about 8,000 years ago.
a. rock age b. rain age c. stone age d. snow age
- 19- is important because it gives us food to eat.
a. farming b. growing c. feeding d. drinking
- 20- We need to protect many of our animals if we do not want them to .
a. die of b. die on c. die out d. die up
- 21- Yassin stopped and rested in a when he was climbing the mountain.
a. flat b. cave c. house d. school
- 22- The fishermen keep their equipment in small wooden on the beach.
a. cuts b. nuts c. huts d. hats
- 23- What was the.....of the accident outside the museum?
a. degree b. result c. cause d. reason
- 24- The came from space and landed in the sea.
a. mountain b. minaret c. meteorite d. monument
- 25- Dinosaurs are found as on earth now.
a. shells b. fossils c. coins d. water
- 26- Scientists do experiments to prove their
a. theories b. poems c. stories d. problems
- 27- People have used to make cups for hundreds of years.
a. stone b. clay c. straw d. sticks
- 28- Have you been as interesting as Alexandria?
a. somewhere b. everywhere c. anywhere d. nowhere
- 29- Don't go diving when the sea is
a. cool b. rough c. calm d. sunny
- 30- is a group of animals that live together in large groups.
a. shark b. whale c. coral d. dolphin
- 31- A is a big, fl at fish that lives at the bottom of the sea.
a. stingray b. whale c. coral d. dolphin
- 32- are very intelligent. They often jump out of the water in front of our boat.
a. sharks b. stingrays c. coral d. dolphins
- 33- are the fastest fish in the world.
a. sailfish b. starfish c. whales d. dolphins
- 34- The said that he saw some beautiful coral under the sea.
a. player b. driver c. runner d. diver
- 35- The best place to see fish is in the old of a boat near the island.
a. bone b. wreck c. footstep d. stone
- 36- There was a lot of when the tourists saw some dolphins following the boat.
a. development b. arrangement c. excitement d. advertisement
- 37- Don't worry if you haven't swum before. The will show you what to do.
a. interviewer b. hero c. instructor d. inventor
- 38- It was a to hear that nobody was hurt in the accident.
a. shock b. relief c. pain d. sadness



Rewrite

السؤال السادس

Future Forms

Grammar

أشكال المستقبل

1 Will + inf. فعل مصدر

كـ- تستخدم (will) لعمل تنبؤ بالمستقبل - اتخاذ قرار سريع - وعد - تهديد - حقيقة :

- I will be 18 next year. (حقيقة)
- I think it will rain tomorrow. (تنبؤ)
- I'll call you when I arrive at the hotel. (وعد)
- I will buy you a car when you succeed. (وعد)
- The door is knocked. I'll open it. (قرار سريع)

كـ- لاحظ أن (المستقبل البسيط) يستخدم مع هذه التعبيرات:

I believe / I feel sure / Perhaps / I expect / I'm sure / I think / I don't think
I wonder / probably / I suppose / I hope / definitely

- There is a good film on TV about science fiction. I think you will enjoy it.
- I expect Mariam will pass the test. She is clever. (السمات ليست دليل)
- I don't think Ahmed will leave the country. • It will probably rain tomorrow.

2 [am / is / are] + going to + inf. فعل مصدر

كـ- تستخدم (going to) لعمل تنبؤ بناء على حقيقة أو دليل في الوقت الحاضر - تخطيط أو نية لفعل شيء :

- There are a lot of clouds in the sky. It's going to rain. (تنبؤ بدليل)
- I listened to the weather forecast. It's going to rain. (تنبؤ بدليل)
- want - decided - planned - intended : تأتي مع أفعال مثل : كـ- لاحظ أن (going to) تأتي مع أفعال مثل :
- Sarah wants to buy a new car so she is going to save a lot of money. (تخطيط)
- We are going to buy a new house next year. My father intended to do that. (نية)
- Watch out! You are going to break the vase.
- The chair is broken. You are going to fall.

3 The present simple tense: زمن المضارع البسيط

كـ- يستخدم (المضارع البسيط) للتعبير عن أحداث وأماكن ومواصلات تسير طبقاً لجدول مواعيد محدد:

- The train leaves at 9 p.m.
- What time does your bus arrive on Saturday?
- The plane arrives at 6 o'clock. • The final exams take place in next June.
- When does the film start? • The episode starts at 7.00 p.m. tonight.
- The library closes at four o'clock. Choose a book quickly, please.
- Tomorrow is Friday. Look at the calendar. (نتيجة)

4 The present continuous: زمن المضارع المستمر

كـ- يستخدم (المضارع المستمر) للتعبير عن أشياء تم الترتيب والتجهيز بالفعل لها لعلها في المستقبل:

- I'm doing a science test next Monday. Mr. Waleed has already prepared a test.
 - Our class is visiting a museum tomorrow. The school arranged for that.
 - We are taking the sleeper train to Aswan tonight. We have got the tickets.
 - I am leaving the office at 11 o'clock. I have permission.
 - We have arranged everything. We are giving a family party tomorrow.
 - I have bought our tickets. We are watching the match on the stadium next Friday.
- كـ- لاحظ أن (المضارع المستمر) يستخدم أفعال مثل:
- arranged - prepared - have permission - has/ have + (P.P) this evening

Test Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- The train to Damietta at ten past eleven.
a. leave b. leaves c. leaving d. will leave
- 2- I think it cold next month.
a. is b. will be c. is being d. is going to be
- 3- Look at the sky! It's full of dark clouds. It soon.
a. can't rain b. is going to rain c. will rain d. rain
- 4- The library at four o'clock, so please choose a book quickly.
a. close b. will close c. closes d. is closed
- 5- We on holiday next week. I've already bought the tickets.
a. goes b. are going c. will go d. go
- 6- Dina can't see her friends this afternoon . She her mother in the kitchen.
a. helps b. is helping c. helped d. will help
- 7- I you when I arrive at the hotel.
a. call b. am going to call c. calls d. will call
- 8- I'm hungry. I think a sandwich.
a. I have b. I'm going to have c. I'll have d. I had
- 9- I think it hot tomorrow.
a. is b. is going to be c. will be d. is being

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets :

- 1- I have arranged everything to give a party next weekend. (giving)
- 2- I'm going to decorate my room. (decided)
- 3- I intend to buy a new car for my wife. (going)
- 4- We all expect his success. (succeed)
- 5- Mona has decided to buy a new dress. (going)
- 6- My plan is to spend the summer in Alexandria. (going)
- 7- The scientists at NASA have arranged everything to launch Apollo. (launching)
- 8- I've arranged to meet Hala tomorrow. (I'm)
- 9- We decided to open a new project. (going to)
- 10- I have arranged to visit Alexandria next Friday. (visiting)
- 11- I intend to spend a week in Qena next summer. (going)
- 12- I have just decided to buy a car. (will)



Grammar

Express possibility in the past

التعبير عن الاحتمال في الماضي

1 might + have + P.P. (ربما / قد)

- تستخدم بمعنى (من المحتمل / من الممكن / ربما)
- للتعبير عن استنتاج ضعيف (عدم تأكيد) في الماضي

- I **might have seen** this film. I can't remember.
- She **might have gone** to the club. I don't know.

كلمات دالة

I'm not sure/certain / لست متأكد perhaps ربما
It's probable / من المحتمل It's likely / من المحتمل
It's possible / من الممكن I don't think / لا أعتقد
I don't know / لا أعرف I can't remember / لا أتذكر

2 must + have + P.P. (من المؤكد / لابد)

- تستخدم بمعنى (لابد أن / من المؤكد أن)
- للتعبير عن استنتاج قوي مثبت في الماضي (تأكد)

- I **must have left** my books at home. I can't find them in my bag.
- There is no train to Ahmed's village. He **must have taken** the bus.

كلمات دالة

I feel sure/certain / متأكد certainly - surely بالتأكيد
definitely / مستحيل impossible بالتأكيد

Express recommendations or regret

التعبير عن توصية أو ندم في الماضي

1 should + have + P.P. كان ينبغي أن

- تستخدم لأعطاء توصية أو التعبير عن اللوم في الماضي
- للتعبير شيء كان من المفترض القيام به (لكنه لم يحدث) تنوحيه اللوم

- I **should have booked** a seat on the train. Now there are no seats left. I **didn't book** a seat.
- You **should have got up** early. The train has already left the station. You **didn't get up** early.
- Samah **should have done** her homework. The teacher is angry with her. She **didn't do** her homework.

2 shouldn't + have + P.P. كان ينبغي ألا

- تستخدم لأعطاء توصية أو التعبير عن الندم في الماضي
- للتعبير عن شيء كان من المفترض عدم القيام به (لكنه حدث) للندم

- I **shouldn't have gone** to bed late last night. I'm very tired now. I went to bed late.
- Heba **shouldn't have wasted** her time. She got very bad marks. She wasted her time.
- Ahmed **shouldn't have broken** the door. He hurt his arm. He broke the door.

Test Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The tourists have brought their coats to Egypt. they won't need them in the summer
a. might b. can't c. shouldn't d. must
- Archaeologists think it is that the coin have belonged to an ancient pharaoh.
a. might b. can c. should d. must
- It have been winter when they took these photos. there are no leaves on the trees.
a. might b. can't c. should d. must
- We the earlier train. it's much quicker than this train.
a. shouldn't catch b. should have caught
c. must catch d. must have caught
- I think my grandfather visited England in the 1960s, but I'm not sure.
a. might have b. must visited
c. should have d. can have
- Mona looks very happy. She have done well in the exam.
a. mustn't b. must c. can't d. should
- You have seen Omar at school yesterday. he was in the hospital.
a. might b. must c. can't d. couldn't
- Nawal have been very tired. She fell asleep on the bus home
a. can't b. must c. should d. mustn't
- I have seen this film already. I can't remember.
a. could b. must c. should d. might
- You have gone to bed late last night. Now you are very tired!
a. shouldn't b. should c. must d. can't
- There is no train to Omar's village. He have taken the bus.
a. shouldn't b. mustn't c. must d. can't
- Waleed can't find his book. He have lost it on his way home.
a. should b. mustn't c. might d. shouldn't
- You missed the start of the show. You have arrived earlier.
a. should b. must c. might d. shouldn't
- Taha have been in Cairo last week. Look, he's in the photo.
a. should b. must c. might d. can't

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets :

- Samy didn't come to the party. No one invited him. (can't)
- Amr's arm hurts. Perhaps he broke it. (might)
- Sami was cold last night. He wore a coat. (must)
- I tried the fish at the restaurant, but I regret it. (shouldn't)
- It is not possible that you saw Mona yesterday. She is in Paris. (can't)
- hany bought the new mobile. I'm not sure. (might)
- I'm sure he went to the theatre yesterday. (must)



Direct & Reported Speech

Grammar

الكلام المباشر والكلام الغير مباشر

- ١- الكلام المباشر (Direct Speech) هو كلام يأتي على لسان شخص (نصاً) موضوعاً بين علامتي تنصيص ".....".
٢- الكلام غير المباشر (Reported Speech) هو كلام ينقله شخص ما عن فائله، ولا يوضع بين علامتي تنصيص.

1 Statement الجملة الخبرية

عند تحويل الجملة الخبرية من مباشر إلى غير مباشر نلتزم الخطوات الآتية:

- (١) إذا كان فعل القول (say/says) تبقّى كما هي **أما** say to / says to تحول إلى tell / tells.
(٢) إذا كان فعل القول (said) تبقّى كما هي **أما** said تحول إلى told.
(٣) نحذف علامتي التنصيص ونربط بكلمة (that) ويمكن حذفها أيضاً.
(٤) إذا كان فعل القول في الماضي (said أو said to) تحول الظروف والأزمنة على النحو التالي:

أسماء الإشارة والتعبيرات الزمنية

this	→	that
these	→	those
here	→	there
today	→	that day
tomorrow	→	the next / following day
yesterday	→	the day before
last week	→	the week before
tonight	→	that night
now	→	then
ago	→	before

الأزمنة والأفعال الناقصة

(didn't) ماضي بسيط	→	(don't/doesn't) مضارع بسيط
(was/were) ماضي مستمر	→	(am/is/are) مضارع مستمر
(hadn't) ماضي تام	→	(V.2/ didn't) ماضي بسيط
(had + V.3) ماضي تام	→	(has/have + V.3) مضارع تام
can	→	could
will	→	would
has/have to	→	had to
must	→	had to / must
may	→	might
shall	→	should

You will face it like that

- Ali said "My mum doesn't get up late". (that) - Ali said that his mum didn't get up late.
- "I helped my mother" Adel said to me. (that) - Adel told me that he had helped his mother.
- Noha said to Hala "The children are playing now". (told) - Noha told Hala the children were playing then.

ملحوظات قامة

(٥) لا يتم تغيير الزمن إذا كان فعل القول (say(s) / tell(s)

Ex. Moaz says, "I will visit my grandparents tomorrow".

Moaz says that he will visit his grandparents the following day.

(٦) لا يتم تغيير الزمن إذا كانت جملة القول تعبر عن حقائق ثابتة (لا شك فيها)

Ex. The teacher said to the students "Lions don't eat grass."

The teacher told the students that lions don't eat grass.

2 The imperatives الجملة الأمرية

عند تحويل الجملة الأمرية من مباشر إلى غير مباشر نلتزم الخطوات الآتية:

- (١) يحول فعل القول (say أو say to) إلى tell.
يحول فعل القول (said أو said to) إلى told / asked / ordered / advised / encouraged / warned.
(٢) يتم حذف علامتي التنصيص ونربط بـ (to) للأمر المثبت **أما** الأمر المنفي بـ (not to).
(٣) يتم تحويل الضمائر حسب المعنى.
(٤) لاحظ تحذف كلمة (please) إذا ذكرت في الجملة الأمرية.

You will face it like that

- "Tidy your room!" said my mother. (ordered) - My mother ordered me to tidy my room.
- Ahmed said "Don't use my phone." (not to) - Ahmed told me not to use his phone.
- "Please, don't be late" my father said. (advised) - My father advised us not to be late.
- "Don't look!" I said to my friend. (warned) - I warned my friend not to look.
- My mother said to me "Come here" (told) - My mother told me to go there.
- He said "Don't copy from the internet". (not to) - He warned us not to copy from the internet.

Test Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- The teacher asked us talk.
a. don't b. not c. not to d. no
2- Father me not to swim in that canal.
a. said b. warned c. says d. encouraged
3- At the airport, they us to show our passports.
a. said b. warned c. ordered d. encouraged
4- Taha's uncle my friends to have a glass of juice.
a. said b. warned c. ordered d. invited
5- Leila's mother her to learn how to cook.
a. said b. encouraged c. ordered d. invited
6- Ayten told me she early the next day on a trip.
a. is leaving b. left c. was leaving d. will leave
7- I encouraged my younger brother hard.
a. to work b. work c. works d. working
8- They us they were in need of money.
a. said b. told c. asked d. invited
9- Some students work in the holidays to some money.
a. spend b. lose c. give d. earn

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets:

- 1- English is our favourite subject," my friends said to me. (told)
2 "Go on! You can swim across the pool!" Mazin's father said to him. (encouraged)
3- The new shop will open in two weeks' time," Sara said to us. (told)
4- "My sister wants to buy a book," said Ahmed. (Ahmed said)
6- "Would you like to read the book?" Randa said to Reem. (invited)
7- "The museum is next to the park," Mr El-Baz said to Omar. (told)
8- "I am learning how to swim," said Tarek. (said)
9- "Don't touch the snake," Nawal said to Ola (warned)
10- "Stand up," the teacher said to the class. (ordered)
11- "You should stop eating so many chocolates," the doctor said to Hala. (advised)
12- The teacher said to me, "Don't forget your pen again." (warned)
13- "Please don't make a noise, Sara," said Ahmed. (not to)
14- "Come to the park with me after school" Manal told me. (invited)
15- "Stand up," the teacher said to the class. (asked)



Direct & Reported Speech

Grammar

الكلام المباشر والكلام الغير مباشر

3 Wh-question السؤال بأداة استفهام

عند تحويل السؤال بكلمة الاستفهام نتبع الخطوات الآتية :

- (1) تحول say أو say to إلى (ask - inquire - wonder - want to know)
- تحول said أو said to إلى : (asked - inquired - wondered - wanted to know)
- (2) نحذف الأقواس ونربط بنفس (أداة الاستفهام المستخدمة) ، ونحذف علامة الاستفهام (؟) ونضع نقطة (.)
- (3) تحول صيغة الاستفهام إلى جملة خبرية أي يقدم الفاعل على الفعل .
- (4) نحول الضمائر حسب المعنى كما في الجملة الخبرية . (5) نحول الأزمنة و الظروف كما في الجملة الخبرية أيضاً .

أسماء الإشارة والتعريفات الرئيسية

this	→	that
these	→	those
here	→	there
today	→	that day
tomorrow	→	the next / following day
yesterday	→	the day before
last week	→	the week before
tonight	→	that night
now	→	then
ago	→	before

الأزمنة والأفعال الناقصة

(didn't) ماضي بسيط	→	(don't/doesn't) مضارع بسيط
(was/were) ماضي مستمر	→	(am/is/are) مضارع مستمر
(had + V.3 / hadn't) ماضي تام	→	(V.2/ didn't) ماضي بسيط
(had + V.3) ماضي تام	→	(has/have + V.3) مضارع تام
can	→	could
will	→	would
has/have to	→	had to
must	→	had to / must
may	→	might
shall	→	should

You will face it like that

- ➔ Omar said to Samir, "When will you pay your debt?" (He asked me)
Omar asked Samir when he would pay his debt .
- ➔ He said to his mother, "Where is my telescope?" (He wanted to know)
He wanted to know where his telescope was.

ملحوظات عامة

(1) يحذف الفعل المساعد (do / does) ويحول الفعل الأساسي إلى (ماضي بسيط)

Ex. Sarah said to me, "What do you want". (asked) ➔ Sarah asked me what I wanted.

(2) يحذف أيضاً الفعل المساعد (did) ويحول الفعل الأساسي إلى (ماضي تام)

Ex. "Where did you go, Tamer" (I asked Tamer) ➔ I asked Tamer where he had gone.

(3) لاحظ إذا كان فعل القول (say / says) يظل زمن الجملة كما هو بدون تغيير .

Ex. "Where do you live" Nabil says to Hala. (asks) ➔ Nabil asks Hala where she lives.

4 Yes/No question السؤال بنهل

عند تحويل السؤال به (هل) نتبع الخطوات التالية :

- (1) تحويل فعل القول (said / said to) إلى (asked / wondered / wanted to know)
- (2) يتم حذف الأقواس ونربط به (if / whether)
- (3) نقوم بترتيب الجملة (فاعل + فعل + ...) . (4) اتباع باقي تعليمات تحويل السؤال بأداة استفهام.

You will face it like that

- Noura said, "Have you ever been to London, Maha?" (if / whether)
➔ Noura asked Maha if she had ever been to London.
- "Are you an astronomer?" the student said to the professor. (if)
➔ The student asked the professor if he was an astronomer.
- "Do you like Egypt, Tom?" said Mona. (Mona asked)
➔ Mona asked Tom if he liked Egypt.
- Soher said to Hala, "Can you lend me some money?" (asked)
➔ Soher asked Hala if she could lend her some money.

Test Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- Ola asked me all the people in my family were tall.
a. that b. what c. if d. weather
- 2- Ahmed asked me what doing yesterday at four o'clock.
a. was I b. I was c. am I d. I am
- 3- Hany asked Tarek if the museum open on Fridays.
a. is b. has been c. was d. will be
- 4- Monir asked the teacher if they astronomy.
a. are studying b. study c. will study d. were studying
- 5- Nawal asked me if looking at the stars at night.
a. I liked b. did I like c. liked d. liked I
- 6- Karim asked his sister if she him with his homework.
a. will help b. is helping c. would help d. helps
- 7- Warda me how long it took me to get to school.
a. said b. advised c. told d. asked
- 8- Adel asked him if watching football matches.
a. did he like b. does he like c. he likes d. he liked
- 9- The policeman asked the boy if he anything.
a. have lost b. losing c. lost d. lose
- 10- Moons usually go around
a. planets b. stars c. the sun d. the solar system
- 11- The teacher wanted us to how the earth goes around the sun.
a. explain b. advise c. regret d. control

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets :

- 1- "Do you like reading, Taha?" asked the teacher. (If)
.....
- 2- "What is the fastest way to Capital Bank?" (I asked)
.....
- 3- Hania asked, "When is the next bus leaving?" (Hania asked me)
.....
- 4- "Will you finish your homework before dinner?" Karim asked his sister. (If)
.....
- 5- "How long does it take you to get to school?" Warda said to me. (asked)
.....
- 6- "Where are you going on holiday in the summer?" I said Youssef. (asked)
.....
- 7- "What book do you want to read?" our teacher asked us. (wanted to know)
.....
- 8- "Can you play the guitar?" Nabila asked Hana. (If)
.....
- 9- Do all the planets have moons? Aya said to Toka. (asked)
.....
- 10- "Are you an astronomer?" the students asked the professor. (whether)
.....



Test Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- I've cleaned the kitchen, but the bedrooms
cleaned yet.

a. haven't been b. has not been c. have been d. wasn't

2- Some beautiful flowers planted outside
the school.

a. has been b. was c. have been d. have

3- We the present perfect in English.

a. have taught b. taught
c. was taught d. have been taught

4- What's the most expensive thing that at the
market this week?

a. bought b. were bought
c. has been bought d. have been bought

5- Some buildings have in the earthquake.

a. damaged b. was damaged
c. been damaging d. been damaged

6- Have any trees in the park this year?

a. been planted b. planted
c. planting d. plant

7- The final seven wonders have written.

a. be b. being c. been d. was

8- The painting for a lot of money.

a. have been sold b. were sold
c. has been sold d. will sell

9- The next date for the book club been
decided yet.

a. has b. hasn't c. haven't d. have

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets :

1- Dina has made a cake for the family party. (A cake)

2- They have taken the books back to the library.
(The books)

3- The students have answered all the questions.
(All the questions)

4- They have planted trees along the river. (Trees)

5- We have collected a lot of money for the charity.
(A lot of money)

6 - Archaeologists have found an ancient building in
the desert. (An ancient building)

7- Our school has won the competition.
(The competition)

8 - Someone has drawn a picture in my diary.
(A picture in my diary)

9- They have painted the building again.
(The building)

10- Mohamed Salah has scored three goals. (by)

11- Have you bought the book? (been)

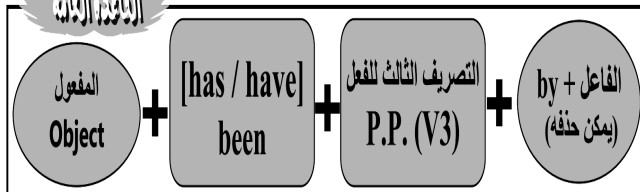
Active & Passive

Grammar

صيغة المعلوم والمجهول

المبنى للمجهول في زمن المضارع التام

التركيب القياسي



1

تكوين الجملة

(التصريف الثالث للفعل) + (has / have) + الفاعل

They have painted the building again.

Someone has drawn a picture in my diary.

(التصريف الثالث للفعل) + P.P. + (has / have) + المفعول

The building has been painted again (by them).

A picture has been drawn in my diary (by someone).

2

النفي

(التصريف الثالث للفعل) + P.P. + (hasn't / haven't) + الفاعل

My mother hasn't washed the dishes yet.

They haven't written their homework yet.

(التصريف الثالث للفعل) + P.P. + (hasn't / haven't) + المفعول

The dishes haven't been washed yet (by my mother).

Their homework hasn't been written yet (by them).

3

السؤال

(Has / Have) + الفاعل + P.P. (التصريف الثالث للفعل)

Have you sold the painting for a lot of money?

Why have chemists made a new medicine?

(Has / Have) + المفعول + been + P.P. (التصريف الثالث للفعل)

Has the painting been sold for a lot of money?

Why has a new medicine been made (by chemists)?

مبنى المعلوم

You will face it like that

مبنى المجهول

Heba has written a letter to Hend. [been] A letter has been written to Hend.

Ahmed has played tennis. [Tennis] Tennis has been played by Ahmed.

I haven't sent the e-mail. [The e-mail] The e-mail hasn't been sent.

Why have you studied English? [been] Why has English been studied?

He has given me a present. [A present] A present has been given to me.

No body has beaten me at chess. [passive] I haven't been beaten at chess.

She hasn't cleaned the floor yet. [been] The floor hasn't been cleaned by her.

I have just painted the room. [has been] The room has been painted by me.

She has done all the jobs. [All] All the jobs have been done.



The second conditional Grammar الحالة الشرطية الثانية

would/could/might

تستخدم الحالة الثانية للتعبير عن الأشياء الغير ممكن حدوثها ومستبعدة الحدوث مستقبلاً.

1
If / unless
 إذا لم / إذا

التصريف الثاني للفعل
 غير منتظم d / ed / ied / فاعل

فعل مصدر + would + inf.
 فاعل + [might / could] + inf.

جملة الشرط (عاطية بسيط) → جملة جواب الشرط

✎ If Manal worked hard at school, she would get high marks.
 ✎ Unless Ahmed went to the station early, he would miss the train.

التركيبات: (If / unless) يمكن أن تأتي في المنتصف ويسبقها جملة جواب الشرط (جملة رئيسية):

✎ Manal would get high marks if she worked hard at school.

✎ Ahmed would miss the train unless he went to the station early.

التركيبات: (unless) تعطي معنى الشرط المنفي ، وتساوي في المعنى (if ... didn't + inf):

✎ Ahmed would miss the train if he didn't go to the station early.

2 might + inf

يمكن استخدام (might) بدلاً من (would) في جواب الشرط للتعبير عن (عدم التأكد / الاحتمالية):

would + perhaps + inf. ✎ If I had enough money, I would perhaps buy a new car. (might)
 would + probably + inf. ✎ If I had enough money, I might buy a new car.
 wouldn't + possibly + inf. ✎ If you went to the bank yesterday, it wouldn't possibly be busy. (might)
 ✎ If you went to the bank yesterday, it might not be busy.

3 could + inf

يمكن استخدام (could) بدلاً من (would) للتعبير عن (القدرة والإمكانية):

would be able to + inf. ✎ If Mariam came first, she would be able to join the trip for free.
 ✎ If Mariam came first, she could join the trip for free.

يمكن استخدام (couldn't) بدلاً من (would) للتعبير عن (الاستحالة):

would be impossible to + inf. ✎ If you went to school on Friday, it would be impossible to enter.
 ✎ If you went to school on Friday, you couldn't enter.

4 because / so

تأتي بعد (أ) الجملة التي بعد (because / as) مع مراعاة (الإنبات والفني) وتستخدم الحالة الثانية:

✎ He doesn't travel by plane because he hates flying. (If)
 ✎ If he didn't hate flying, he would travel by plane.

تأتي بعد (أ) الجملة التي قبل (so / that's why) مع مراعاة (الإنبات والفني) وتستخدم الحالة الثانية:

✎ He doesn't like football that's why he doesn't join the football team. (If)
 ✎ If he liked football, he would join the football team.

5 If I were

تستخدم قاعدة (أ) في الحالة الثانية لإعطاء النصيحة كما في الصيغة التالية:

You should + inf. ✎ I advise you to see a doctor. (If)
 I advise you to + inf. ✎ If I were you, I would see a doctor.
 It would be better if ... ✎ It would be better if Hala did her homework alone. (were)
 ✎ If I were Hala, I would do my homework alone.

Test Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We go to England if we had friends or family there.
a. would b. will c. won't d. were
- If Hassan older, he could learn to drive a car.
a. is b. was c. would be d. had been
- If I knew the answer to the question, I you.
a. will tell b. tell c. won't tell d. would tell
- If Hala German, she might talk to the German tourists.
a. spoke b. speak c. will speak d. had spoken
- If he read really carefully, he understand the book.
a. can't b. don't c. would d. won't
- If we went to the beach, we swimming.
a. will go b. have gone c. could go d. won't go
- If you visited the zoo on Friday, it very busy.
a. is b. might have c. would have d. might be
- If we all loved each other, the world be a better place.
a. would b. will c. can d. may
- Where you go if you wanted to relax?
a. will b. might c. can d. may

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets:

- Perhaps if we see the teacher, she can help us with our homework. (might)
- He can't go to the party as he doesn't have free time. (If)
- If you learnt Japanese, you would perhaps get a job in Tokyo. (might)
- Ali would be able to run quickly if he exercised every day. (could)
- I'm very short. so, I can't play basketball. (If)
- If you didn't get help, you'd be in trouble. (Unless)
- It would be better if Hany did the homework alone. (If I were)
- If Hany were rich, he could buy a villa. (so)
- If Ali didn't wake up early, he wouldn't catch the school bus. (Unless)
- It would be better if Leila studied well for the exams. (were)
- If he had a car, he could travel to Alex. (because)
- If they didn't come early, they might not catch the train. (Unless)
- I'm too busy to visit my aunt (If)



The Past Perfect Tense

Grammar

زمن الماضي التام

Past Perfect

زمن الماضي التام

Past Simple

زمن الماضي البسيط

1

التكوين

* يستخدم ليعبر عن (فعل) تم إكمال في الماضي (قبل الماضي البسيط) * يستخدم للتعبير عن فعل تم في الماضي (حدث ثانياً بعد الماضي التام)

Subject + had ('d) + P.P.

Subject + V.2 [d,ed,ied, منتظم غير منتظم]

- He had done his homework before he went out.
- I'd watched TV before I went to the bed.
- She studied English after he had had her lunch.
- He visited the zoo after he had visited the tower.

2

النفي

Subject + hadn't + P.P.

فعل مصدر + Subject + didn't + P.P.

- I hadn't opened the door before you knocked it.
- He didn't sell his car until he had repaired it.
- Manal hadn't bought clothes.
- Mohamed didn't go shopping yesterday.

3

الأسئلة

Had + Subject + P.P. ?

Did + Subject + فعل مصدر + ?

- Had you finished your homework by five?
- Did Ayman study his lesson yesterday?
- What had Rodina bought from the shop?
- Why did Ginger respect Mr. Gordon?

Time connectors الروابط الزمنية

* تذكر أن : الحدث الأول (هو الماضي التام) ، والحدث الثاني (هو الماضي البسيط)

1 After **بعد** → زمن الماضي التام → زمن الماضي البسيط

As soon as **بمجرد أن** → زمن الماضي التام → زمن الماضي البسيط

When **عندما** → زمن الماضي التام → زمن الماضي البسيط

because / as **لأن** → زمن الماضي التام → زمن الماضي البسيط

After he had parked his car, he went to work.

He had breakfast as soon as he had washed his face.

When he had killed the goose, he found nothing inside it.

Sarah passed the final exam because she had studied hard.

2 Before **قبل** → زمن الماضي البسيط → زمن الماضي التام

By the time **قبل** → زمن الماضي البسيط → زمن الماضي التام

When **عندما** → زمن الماضي البسيط → زمن الماضي التام

so / that's why **لذلك** → زمن الماضي البسيط → زمن الماضي التام

Before he arrived, his uncle had left.

Sama had written the e-mail by the time she sent it to Ahmed.

When the winter came, the ant found enough food to eat.

Sarah had studied hard that's why she passed the final exam.

ملحوظات هامة

⚠ لاحظ أن في حالة عدم وجود فاعل بعد (Before / After) نستخدم (V.ing) بعدهم:

- After parking his car, he went to work.
 - Before having breakfast, he had washed his face.
- ⚠ لاحظ أن: When ليس لها قاعدة ثابتة.

3 didn't + inf [wasn't / weren't] + P.P. → until / till → had + P.P.

← زمن الماضي البسيط (نفي) → زمن الماضي التام

- Ahmed didn't watch TV until he had done his homework.
- The car wasn't sold to Samy till Ahmed had repaired it. (الماضي البسيط مبني للمجهول)

4 By **وقت محدد في الماضي** → **زمن الماضي التام**

Before

By 2003, my sister had graduated from the university.

Before my last birthday, I had bought a smartphone.

Test Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The river was very dry because it for two months.
 - a. doesn't rain
 - b. rained
 - c. had not rained
 - d. has not rained
- What before you played tennis?
 - a. you eat
 - b. you had eaten
 - c. you ate
 - d. had you eaten
- He was happy because he his exams.
 - a. passed
 - b. has passed
 - c. had passed
 - d. passes
- Nobody knew about the site because everyone about it.
 - a. has forgotten
 - b. forgot
 - c. forgets
 - d. had forgotten
- Fareeda enjoyed visiting sohag because she there before.
 - a. had never been
 - b. has never been
 - c. was never
 - d. is never
- After we had visited the museum, we to have lunch.
 - a. decided
 - b. had decided
 - c. decides
 - d. decide
- Waleed had forgotten about the family party until he the invitation.
 - a. saw
 - b. had seen
 - c. has seen
 - d. see
- We couldn't go to the concert because we booked ticket.
 - a. didn't
 - b. had
 - c. hadn't
 - d. hasn't
- Before our teacher to our school, she had taught in another school.
 - a. come
 - b. had come
 - c. came
 - d. comes
- We in the restaurant because we had eaten already.
 - a. hadn't eaten
 - b. didn't eat
 - c. don't eat
 - d. aren't eating
- Before Olivia visited Egypt, she Arabic before.
 - a. has never heard
 - b. didn't hear
 - c. had never heard
 - d. have never heard
- I visited Cairo after I Alexandria.
 - a. visit
 - b. had visited
 - c. have visited
 - d. visiting
- he visited them before he flew to London?
 - a. Did
 - b. Has
 - c. Had
 - d. Would
- The teacher explained the past perfect because we it before.
 - a. hadn't studied
 - b. hasn't studied
 - c. wasn't studied
 - d. didn't study

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets :

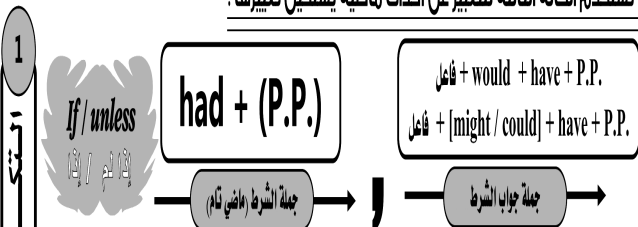
- Adel watched TV after he had studied his lesson. (Before)
- I went to school, then I played tennis. (After)
- he went back to the office. he left his camera there. (because)
- Before he played the game, he had trained hard. (until)
- He arrived at the station after the train had left. (By the time)
- First, Moaz played computer games. Then, He went to bed. (After)



The third conditional Grammar الحالة الشرطية الثالثة

would / might / could

تستخدم الحالة الثالثة للتعبير عن أحداث ماضية يستحيل تغييرها.



- ✗ If Hany had got up late, he wouldn't have caught the school bus.
- ✗ Unless Ahmed had studied hard, he wouldn't have succeeded.

ملاحظات

لا تلاحظ (if / unless) يمكن أن تأتي في (المتنصف) ويسبقها جملة جواب الشرط (جملة رئيسية):

- ✗ Hala would have got better if she had seen a doctor.
- ✗ Ayman wouldn't have won the race unless he had trained hard.

لا تلاحظ (unless) تعطي معنى الشرط المنفي ، وتساوي في المعنى (if ... hadn't + P.P.)

- ✗ If Ayman hadn't trained hard, he wouldn't have won the race.

2 might + have + P.P.

يمكن استخدام (might) بدلاً من (would) في جواب الشرط، للتعبير عن (عدم الاحتمالية):

- would + perhaps + have + P.P. ✗ If you had come, I would probably have made you a meal.
- would + probably + have + P.P. ✗ If you had come, I might have made you a meal.
- wouldn't + possibly + have + P.P. ✗ We wouldn't possibly have seen him if we hadn't gone to the concert.
- ✗ We might not have seen him if we hadn't gone to the concert.

3 could + have + P.P.

يمكن استخدام (could) بدلاً من (would) للتعبير عن (القدرة والمكانية):

- would have been able to + inf. ✗ If she had learnt English, she would have been able to get a better job.
- ✗ If she had learnt English, she could have got a better job.

4 because / so

يأتي بعد (If) الجملة التي بعد (because / as) مع مراعاة (الإنيات والنفي) وتستخدم الحالة الثالثة (إذا كان الكلام ماضي):

- ✗ I didn't buy that expensive toy because I didn't have much money. (If)
- ✗ If I had had more money, I would have bought that expensive toy.

يأتي بعد (If) الجملة التي قبل (so / that's why) مع مراعاة (الإنيات والنفي) وتستخدم الحالة الثالثة (إذا كان الكلام ماضي):

- ✗ My father drove me to school so I arrived on time. (If / been late)
- ✗ If my father hadn't driven me to school, I wouldn't have arrived on time.
- ✗ If my father hadn't driven me to school, I would have been late.

Test Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

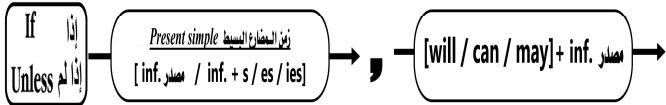
- If I that he was famous, I would have taken a photograph of him.
a. knew b. know c. had known d. was knowing
 - If Osama had got the job at the bank, he travelled a lot.
a. will have b. would c. had d. would have
 - Sami played basketball if he had forgotten to bring the ball.
a. wouldn't have b. would have c. would d. wouldn't
 - If I that camera in the shop, we wouldn't have bought it.
a. saw b. hadn't seen c. haven't seen d. see
 - If Amr had visited his cousins in Australia last year, he Sydney.
a. will visit b. would visit
c. would have visited d. visited
 - If Mr. Al-Baz the plane this morning, he would have been in Paris by now.
a. catches b. caught c. was catching d. had caught
 - If Mona to the Red Sea last summer, she would have swum in the sea.
a. went b. had gone c. has gone d. will go
 - We wouldn't have gone to the beach if we it was so windy!
a. knew b. would know c. had known d. know
 - If they more careful, they wouldn't have had that bad accident.
a. had been b. has been c. were d. are
 - If she me, I'd have helped her.
a. phone b. phoned c. had phoned d. phoning
 - If Ahmed hadn't lived in China, he wouldn't to speak Chinese.
a. learn b. had learned c. have learned d. learned
 - If Ali had read the book, he have known what happened at the end.
a. will b. could c. can d. may
- 2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets:
- I didn't have much money, so I didn't buy that expensive toy. (If)
 - I forgot my library card. I couldn't borrow a book. (If)
 - I was tired. I didn't watch the documentary about dinosaurs. (If)
 - Because my father drove me to school, I arrived on time. (If)
 - I was ill, so I didn't go to work. (If)
 - I didn't recognise your cousin so I didn't say hello. (If)
 - I didn't have your mobile number, so I couldn't phone you. (If)
 - If he had studied hard, he would have succeeded. (because)



The conditionals Grammar الحالات الشرطية

1 First Conditional الحالة الأولى

* تستخدم للتعبير عن شيء محتمل أو قابل للحدوث في المستقبل :



☒ If we go to the sports club tomorrow, we will phone you.

☒ Unless he works hard, he won't earn enough money.

* تستخدم (may / might) بدلاً من (Will) للتعبير عن الاحتمال :

will + perhaps + inf. ☒ If I run quickly, I will probably arrive in time.

will + probably + inf. ☒ If I run quickly, I might arrive in time.

will + possibly + inf. * تستخدم (can) بدلاً من (Will) للتعبير عن القدرة والإمكانية :

☒ If my mother helps me, I will be able to prepare lunch.

☒ If my mother helps me, I can prepare lunch.

الملاحظات

☒ لاحظ أن (if / unless) يمكن أن تأتي في (المتنصف) ويسبقها جملة جواب الشرط (جملة رئيسية) :

☒ Hasnaa will get up late if she goes to bed late.

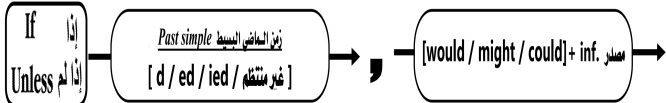
☒ He won't earn enough money unless he works hard.

☒ لاحظ أن (unless) تعطي معنى الشرط المنفي ، ونساي في المعنى (if ... don't / doesn't + inf.) :

☒ He won't earn enough money if he doesn't work hard.

2 Second Conditional الحالة الثانية

* تستخدم للتعبير عن أشياء غير محتملة الحدوث مستقبلاً مستبعدة أو تخيلية :



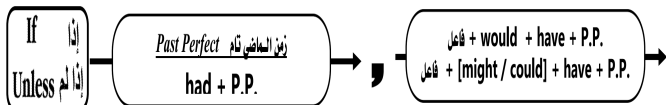
☒ If he saw a shark, he wouldn't be frightened. (مستبعد حدوثه مستقبلاً)

☒ If I had a lot of money, I would buy a palace. (تخيل في الوقت الحاضر)

☒ راجع الحالة الشرطية الثانية (Unit 15)

3 Third Conditional الحالة الثالثة

* تستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث ماضية يستحيل تغييرها :



☒ If she had learnt English, she would have got a better job.

☒ Unless Ahmed had studied hard, he wouldn't have succeeded.

☒ راجع الحالة الشرطية الثالثة (Unit 17)

because / so

١. تستخدم الحالة الثانية إذا كانت جملة (because/so) مضارع وتعمل المفعول المنفي والمثبت معاً :

☒ I don't have enough money, so I can't buy this smartphone. (If)

☒ If I had enough money, I would buy this smartphone.

٢. تستخدم الحالة الثانية إذا كانت إحدى الجملتين (because/so) ماضي والأخرى مضارع وتعمل المفعول المنفي والمثبت معاً :

☒ Sarah didn't go to school because she is ill. (If)

☒ If Sarah wasn't ill, she would go to school.

٣. تستخدم الحالة الثانية إذا كانت الجملتين (because/so) ماضي ، وتعمل المفعول المنفي والمثبت معاً :

☒ She didn't go to school because she was ill. (If)

☒ If Sarah hadn't been ill, she would have gone to school.

Test Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- If we see Ali, we ask him to phone you.

- a. would b. would have c. will d. do

2- If Leila had more free time, she read more books in English.

- a. would b. would have c. will d. must

3- If we to the sea, we might see the dolphins.

- a. went b. going c. goes d. had gone

4- If the sea is calm, we go diving today.

- a. would have b. would c. had to d. can

5- If the museum open on Friday, we would see the mummies.

- a. is b. was c. had d. are

6- Eyad would have opened the door if he a key.

- a. had b. had had c. has d. has had

7- If I that camera in the shop, we wouldn't have bought it.

- a. saw b. hadn't seen c. haven't seen d. see

8- What would you do if you some money in the street?

- a. will find b. would have found c. find d. found

9- If you very fast, you'll catch your train.

- a. ran b. running c. runs d. run

10- If you eat too many sweets, you bad teeth.

- a. have b. won't have c. will have d. would have

11- If your sister hard, she will get low marks.

- a. studies b. studied c. don't study d. doesn't study

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets :

1- If I see Sayed, perhaps I'll ask him to help me with my homework. (might)

2- I was ill, so I didn't go to work. (If)

3- I'm not sure where Tarek is. Perhaps he's in the park. (might)

4- I didn't recognise your cousin so I didn't say hello. (If)

5- If we use a telescope tonight, we'll see a planet. (Unless)

6- If they went to London, they could practise speaking English. (so)

7- If Hassan was ill, he couldn't take the science test. (because)

8- Ayman was careless, so he failed his exams. (if)

9- I couldn't help her because I am not a doctor. (If)

10- I didn't know Rodina, so I didn't speak to her. (If)

11- He was ill, That's why he didn't come to school. (If)



E-mail & Paragraphs

السؤال السابع

A train journey you had

Last week , we went to Aswan. We went there by train. It was a good journey. My father books us tickets in the sleeper train. It had a comfortable beds. It's exciting to sleep in a place and wake up in another .We had a good time.

A journey I plan to go on

To : Mustafa

From: Abdo

About : A journey I plan to go on.

Hi Kamal,

I'd like to tell you about the journey I plan to go on. I plan to go to Dahab in Sharm el Sheikh. It's very beautiful. I decided to go there next summer. I intend to book a room in a good hotel. I will dive and swim in the sea. Would you like to come with me?

Yours,
Abdo

Kinds of trains

To: Marwa

From: Tarek

About: Kinds of trains

Hello Marwa,

Yesterday's English class was about kinds of trains. It was exciting. We got lots of information. There are many kinds of trains. The stopping train, this kind is quite slow. The express train, it's very fast but its ticket is quite expensive. You can get a cheaper ticket if you have a rail card.

See you soon.
Tarek

My friend who stopped smoking

To : Yunis

From : Hany

About : My friend who stopped smoking

Dear Yunis,

I'd like to tell you about my friend Adham .He smoked all the time. He might have been addicted to smoking. He might have helped him with his problems. However, he coughed all the time and he became very ill. The doctors told Adham that he had a lung disease from too much smoking. However, life is better for Adham now. I saw him last week. He had an operation and he is healthy now. He has stopped smoking and has started to study a gain. With my best wishes.

Yours,
Hany

What I should have done to be healthy

To: Ahmed

From : Moataz

About : What I should have done to be healthy.

Dear Ahmed,

I want to tell you about my problem. I put on too much weight. I ate too much sweets. I didn't practice any sports. Now I can't walk and I can't breathe easily. I shouldn't have eaten too much. I should have done sports to get fit.

See you soon.

Moataz

Education in Egypt

To: Sara

From : Hend

About :Education in Egypt.

Dear Sara,

I'd like to tell you about the education in Egypt. In Egypt students go to school at the age of six. The primary stage lasts for six years. The preparatory stage lasts for three years. After the preparatory stage , students join secondary schools and technical schools. This stage lasts for three years too. What about yours?

All the best

Hend

Your plan about your mid-year holiday

My name is Amr. I am a student at a preparatory school. In the mid-year holiday my father is going to take us to visit Luxor. We will go by train. It's more comfortable than driving. We are going to visit the temples and ancient sites. We will stay in a hotel.

Something you are addicted to

I'm Ahmed and I have a big problem. I'm addicted to social media. I spend too much time using social networking sites. I became careless. I don't care about my family or friends. I don't want to go to my school or study my lessons. I hope I will get better soon.

Social networking sites

Some people become addicted to using social networking sites. At first , they use them just to send messages to their friends. And to find out what their friends are doing. However, some people need to check their social networking sites all the time. If they don't check them , they began to worry and feel unhappy. The best way to help these people is to suggest that they only use social networking sites for about half an hour. Encourage them to play a sport.



A bad habit you want to stop

My name is Adel. I'm a student at a preparatory school. I am addicted to smoking. It's a very bad habit. It made me sick and have lung disease. It made me fail my exams. I want to stop it. I'll ask my teacher for help.

Some useful advice a teacher or a friend has given you

My name is Amr. I'm a student at a technical school. I'm addicted to social networking sites. I spent too much on my phone. I get bad marks. My teacher asked me about my problem and I told him. He advised me not to spend too much time on the internet. He advised me to study my lessons hard. I'm very thankful to him.

Means of transport in Cairo

There are many ways to get around Cairo. You can use cars , buses and taxis. The quickest way to get around Cairo is taking the metro. It's fast. The tickets are cheap , too. They 're two pound each. So I always take the metro while going to work.

The underground metro

I think the metro is the greatest project in Cairo. It's the fastest mean of transport. It saves a lot of time and money. It helped with the problem of traffic jam. The tickets are two pound s each. The metro carries about three million passengers every day. It made transport easy in Cairo.

The form of transport you usually use

I usually travel to my cousin in Luxor. It's a long journey. I usually travel by train. It's fast and safe. I book tickets online. I usually use the express train. The tickets are quite expensive but it's the fastest.

توقعات الامتحان

7 Write a paragraph of (7) sentences about :

- Some useful advice a teacher or friend has given you .

- The importance of vocational schools.

- How your school has changed over the past few years.

- Someone you have interviewed

- One of the ancient or modern wonders of the world.

- Animals that lived in the past.

- A story with a moral.

7 Write an e-mail of (7) sentences about :

- You were planning to meet your friends an hour ago, but they haven't arrived. What do you think might, must or should have happened?

- A situation when someone tried to persuade you to do something but you refused.

- A visit to the Red Sea

- An animal that you like

VOCABULARY

Unit 10

travel for	يسافر
station	محطة
sleeper train	قطار النوم
meeting	اجتماع
leaves	يغادر
wait	ينتظر
busy	مزدحم
way	طريق
scenery	مناظر طبيعية
journey	رحلة طويلة
trip	رحلة قصيرة
flight	رحلة جوية
voyage	رحلة بحرية
comfortable	مريح
destination	مكان الوصول
booking	حجز
tickets	تذاكر
online	عبر الانترنت
single	ذهاب
return	ذهاب وعودة
first class	درجة أولى
economy	درجة اقتصادية
takes	يستغرق
carriage	عربة قطار
assistant	عامل - مساعد
put down	يضع
wake up	يستيقظ
best wishes	أطيب الأمنيات
prepare for	يُعد - يجهز
spend	يقضي
businessman	رجل أعمال
express	سريع
assistant	مساعد
air conditioning	تكييف
rail card	كارت اشتراك
cheaper	أرخص
without	بدون
get on	يركب
get off	ينزل من
get out of	يخرج من
midday	منتصف النهار

Unit 11

make choice	يختار
right	صحيح
successful	ناجح
hard	صعب
changed	متغير
smoke	يدخن
addicted to	مدمن على
cough	يكح
lung	رئة
disease	مرض
spend	يقضي
enough	كافي
pass	يجتاز
regret	يندم
operation	عملية جراحية
healthy	صحي
persuade	يقنع
illness	مرض - تعب
breathe	يتنفس
cut into	يقطع - يفتح
damage	يتلف - يدمر
do well	يؤدي جيدا
do badly	يؤدي بسوء
sweets	حلوى
cause	يسبب
heart	قلب
accident	حادثة
fix	يصلح - يثبت
belong to	يخص
physical	جسدي
addiction	ادمان
body	جسم
cigarette	سيجارة
wake up	يستيقظ
psychological	نفسي
social	اجتماعي
sites	مواقع
unhappy	غير سعيد
instead of	بدلا من
success	النجاح
object to	يعترض على

Unit 12

transport	النقل
workers	عمال
work on	يعمل في مشروع
project	مشروع
building	مبنى
middle	وسط
station	محطة
part	جزء
metro line	خط المترو
site	موقع
manager	مدير
look out for	يحترس من
helmet	خوذة
experience	خبرة
group	مجموعة
around	حول
manual	يدوي
proud	فخور
especially	خصوصا
encourage	يشجع
warn	يحذر
order	يأمر
boots	حذاء برفقة
manage	يدير
airport	مطار
dangerous	خطير
guide	مرشد
special	خاص او مميز
feel proud	يشعر بالفخر
under ground	تحت الارض
cleaner	عامل نظافة
mechanic	ميكانيكي
inspector	مفتش
angry with	غاضب من
firefighter	رجل اطفاء
waiter	جرسون
extremely	للاغاية
conductor	كمسري
60 percent	60%
dual	ثنائي
opinion	رأي
break down	يتعطل
nursing	التمريض

Unit 13

observatory	مرصد
astronomy	علم الفلك
solar system	نظام شمسي
astronomers	علماء الفلك
planets	كواكب
different	مختلف
sizes	أحجام
earth	الأرض
shapes	أشكال
shooting star	شهاب
temperature	درجة الحرارة
piece of	قطعة - جزء
rock	صخرة
space	فضاء
get hotter	يزداد حرارته
burns	يحترق
disappear	يختفي
shine on	يسطع على
around	حول - حوالى
degree	درجة
side	جانب
freezing	متجمد
minus	سالبة
plus	زائد
false	مزيف - خطأ
solar eclipse	كسوف الشمس
telescope	تلسكوب
turn	يتحول - يدور
wonder	يسأل
fact	حقيقة
likes	أشياء مفضلة
professor	استاذ جامعي
following	يتابع
in front of	أمام
part of	جزء من
missing	مفقود
knowledge	معرفة
meteorite	نيازك
tiny	صغير جدا
enormous	ضخم - هائل
relatives	أقارب
fiction	خيال
atmosphere	غلاف جوي

Unit 14

wonders	عجائب
wander	يتجول
dome	قبة
marble	رخام
minarets	مآذن
monuments	أثار
India	الهند
Greece	اليونان
Greek	يوناني
list	قائمة - لسته
menu	قائمة طعام
amazing	مذهل
statues	تماثيل
temple	معبد
Hanging Gardens	حدائق معلقة
lighthouse	منارة
original	أصلي
suggest	يقترح
decision	قرار
on the list	في القائمة
special	خاص
ruler	حاكم
fountain	نافورة
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
damage	يدمر
pollution	التلوث
oasis	واحه
add to	يضيف الى
UNESCO	اليونسكو
protect	يحمي
preserve	يحفظ
decorate	يدهن
shapes	أشكال
man-made	من صنع الانسان
natural	طبيعي
vote on	يصوت على
final	نهائي
of course	بالطبع
describe	يصف
totally	تماما
waterfalls	شلالات
Bibliotheca	مكتبة
brochure	كتيب

Unit 15

technology	تكنولوجيا
latest	الأحدث
Arab	عربي
country	بلد
nearly	حوالي - تقريبا
users	مستخدمين
changing	يتغير
developments	تطورات
social media	وسائل التواصل
companies	شركات
advertise	يعلن
arrange	يرتب
interview	مقابلة - حوار
in fact	في الحقيقة
encourage	يشجع
privacy	خصوصية
digital	رقمي
social networking sites	مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي
the same	نفس الشيء
sports	رياضي
team	فريق
useful	مفيد
transfer	يحول - ينقل
even	حتى
Smartphone	تليفون عصري
online	متصل بالنت
magazines	مجلات
require	يحتاج - يتطلب
arrangements	ترتيبات
advertisement	اعلان
requirements	متطلبات
develop	يطور
report	تقرير
on the internet	على الانترنت
what else	ماذا أيضا
highest	أعلى
Arab world	العالم العربي
tell more	يخبر أكثر
although	بالرغم من
be careful	كن حريص
problems	مشاكل
scams	احتيال
gallery	معرض

Unit 16

animal	حيوان
stories	قصص
moral	مغزي - هدف
give advice	يعطي نصيحة
equipment	معدات
ancient	قديم
prepare for	يعد - يجهز
future	المستقبل
relax	يسترخي
kill	يقتل
ant	نملة
grasshopper	جرادة
summer	الصيف
however	برغم ذلك
greedy	طماع
message	رساله
summary	ملخص
collect	يجمع
food	طعام
grass	عشب
content	سعيد - راضي
foolish	أحمق
hard	صعب
winter	الشتاء
refuse	يرفض
think about	يفكر في
enough	كاف
spring	الربيع
remember	يتذكر
market	السوق
inside	بداخل
encourage	يشجع
wise	حكيم
hungry	جائع
goose	وزة
golden	ذهبي
contents	محتويات
soldier	جندي
laid	يضع
yellow	أصفر
pick up	يلتقط
metal	معدن
decide to	يقرر

السؤال الاول المحادثة 4 درجات

Finish the following dialogue:

1- Nader is talking to his father about his blog

Father: What are you doing, Nader?

Nader: I am trying to start a blog.

Nader:

(1).....?

Shady: It's about diving.

Nader: (2)

.....?

Shady: Yes, of course. I have taken a lot of photos with the phone camera for my blog.

Nader: What is a good place for diving in Egypt?

Shady: (3).....

Father: What can you see underwater when you go diving?

Nader: (4).....

المناقشة 2019

2- Tamer is buying a ticket at a train station.

Tamer : Good morning. Can I buy a ticket to Aswan, please?

Assistant : Sure.

.....(1).....?

Tamer : Return, please. What time is the next train?

Assistant :(2).....

Tamer : I should hurry

then.....(3).....?

Assistant : It's LE 100.

Tamer : Which platform does the train leave from?

Assistant :(4).....

السؤال 2019

3- Reda meets a tourist on his way to the museum

Reda : Welcome to Egypt. What's your name?

Tourist : Thanks a lot.(1).....

Reda :(2).....?

Tourist : I am from Britain.

Reda :(3).....?

Tourist : I'll stay here or 2 weeks.

Reda : What places are you interested in?

Tourist :(4).....

أبنانا في الخارج 2019

4- Ali is booking a ticket to Luxor.

Ali : Can I book a ticket to Luxor?

Clerk :(1)

Ali :(2)?

Clerk : The train leaves at 10 am.

Ali : Is there a sleeping car?

Clerk :(3) .

Ali :(4)?

Clerk : The ticket costs 100 pounds.

شمال سيناء 2019

5-Zeinab is talking to an astronomer.

Zeinab : Can I ask you some questions ?

Astronomer :(1)

Zeinab :(2).....

Astronomer : There are 8 planets in our solar system.

Zeinab :(3).....

Astronomer : No, not all the planets have moons.

Zeinab : Thank you very much.

Astronomer : (4).....

أسوان 2019

6-Mostafa is telephoning the Palace Hotel to book a room.

Receptionist : Good morning , Palace Hotel .

Can I help you?

Mostafa:.....

Receptionist : Do you want a single or a double room?

Mostafa:.....

Receptionist:.....?

Mostafa: I'll stay for three days.

Receptionist:.....?

Mostafa :Mostafa a Abd El - Salam.

أسيوط 2019

السؤال الثاني الموافق 3 درجات

2- Write what would you say in each of the following situations:

1. Your friend thinks that the film you both watched on TV was boring but you disagree.

..... أسبوط 2019

2. Your father told you that the Egyptian football team won the match.

..... أسبوط 2019

3. You want to ask your teacher politely if he likes his job.

..... أسبوط 2019

4. You want to book a return ticket to Aswan.

.....

..... أبنانا في الخارج/السويس 2019

5. You advise your brother to revise the lesson again.

.....

..... أبنانا في الخارج 2019

6. You smoked a cigarette and now you feel ill. You regret it.

..... اسوان 2018

7. Your brother tells you that he has lost his expensive watch.

.....

....

..... أبنانا في الخارج 2019

8. A friend starts to read you an interesting story, but then suddenly stops.....

.....

..... الأقصر/السويس 2018

9. Your friend smoked a cigarette last night.

.....

..... شمال سيناء 2019

10. Your little brother ate a lot of sweets and now feels ill.....

.....

..... الإسماعيلية/السويس 2018

11. You think that this lesson is very interesting. You want to know what your friend thinks of it.

.....

..... السويس 2018

12. you hear that scientists have found a new effective medicine.....

..... الاسكندرية/كفر الشيخ 2018

13. You need to borrow your friend's laptop.

.....

.....

..... السويس 2019 / سوهاج/الجيزة/ الاسكندرية 2018

14. Your brother did badly in the exam.

.....

.....

..... الاسكندرية 2018

15. A friend tells you that he has won a prize. You are very surprised.

.....

..... القاهرة 2018

16- Your sister is telling you a story. Encourage her to continue.

.....

..... المنوفية 2019

17-You see a news report about poor people who live in Egypt. You would like to help them.

..... What a pity! I wish that I could help these people.

..... سوهاج/الأقصر 2018 السويس 2019

18- Your cousin asks you when your school was, built.....

..... الاسكندرية 2019

السؤال الرابع قصة " البلاك بيوتي " 7 درجات

1-Match column A with column B: 2 Marks

	A		B
1	Filcher	a	<i>didn't feel strong enough to work well or kick people.</i>
2	Black Beauty	b	<i>was arrested for stealing Black Beauty's food</i>
3	Ginger	c	<i>was too weak to carry the family and their luggage up the hill</i>
4	Mrs Fowler	d	<i>was a woman who lived in the country with her two sisters.</i>
		e	<i>was a wealthy woman who had a house in the country.</i>

المنوفية 2018

	A		B
1	Mr. Barry	a	<i>the horse who works with Black Beauty driving taxis.</i>
2	Lady Smythe	b	<i>A wealthy woman who has a house in the country.</i>
3	Captain	c	<i>Earl Smythe's daughter.</i>
4	Mrs Fowler	d	<i>A businessman and Black Beauty's owner in Bath.</i>
	1-d 2-e 3- a 4-b	e	<i>liked the latest fashion</i>

اسوان 2018

	A		B
1	Mr. Barry	a	<i>was Jerry's son.</i>
2	Lady Smythe	b	<i>was a rich man who bought Black Beauty.</i>
3	Harry	c	<i>liked her horses to wear special reins.</i>
4	Filcher	d	<i>had no problems all his life.</i>
	1-b 2-c 3- a 4-e	e	<i>gave Black Beauty less food each week.</i>

الأقصر 2018

Answer the following questions: 5 M

1. How did Jerry describe Black Beauty to his daughter?

.....
الاقصر 2019 / القاهرة 2018

2. Why wasn't Black Beauty put into a carriage for two days?

✗ Because Jerry was too ill to take him out for work.

بنانا في الخارج 2019

3. Why did Ginger stop kicking people who weren't good to her?

.....
.....

الاقصر 2019

4. Why didn't Black Beauty recognise Joe Green at first? How did Joe Green change at the end?

✗ Because he was now a tall, strong man.

بنانا في الخارج/المنوفية 2019

5. Why do you think that each of Ginger's owners paid less money for her?

✗ Because she was becoming weaker and weaker, so she could not work very well.

بنانا في الخارج/المنوفية 2019

6. Do you think Black Beauty was angry with Ginger after the accident?

شمال سيناء 2019

7. How did Mrs. Fowler help Jerry?

المنوفية 2019

8. Do you think that people were always happy to have Jerry as a taxi driver? Why/Why not?

المنوفية 2019

9. What happened when Black Beauty tried to pull the carriage up a hill?

سوهاج 2018

10. What happened to Black Beauty and Ginger after Ginger began to kick?

السويس/المنوفية/الاسماعيلية 2018

11. Do you think that Jerry was kind to his horses? Why / Why not?

المنوفية/بورسعيد/الاسكندرية 2018

12. Why were holidays not always an easy time for taxi drivers?

المنوفية 2019

13. What advice did the doctor give Mr. Barry to keep healthy?

المنوفية 2019/القليوبية/الاسكندرية 2018

14. Why do you think Skinner made Black Beauty work hard?

المنوفية 2018

15. What did Filcher do with Black Beauty's food?

القليوبية 2018

16. In what ways was Earls Hall Park better than Birtwick Park?

القاهرة 2018/البحر الأحمر 2019

17. Why did Black Beauty like Jerry Barker?

سوهاج/اسوان/الفيوم 2018

18. What do you think of Skinner?

السويس/القاهرة/بورسعيد/الفيوم/اسوان 2018/البحر الأحمر

2019

19. Why did the Earl decide to sell the horses?

الأقصر/بورسعيد/دمياط 2019/اسيوط 2018/بناتنا في

الخارج/المنوفية 2019

20. Why did Black Beauty find it difficult about living in London?

بورسعيد 2019

الأقصر/اسيوط/الاسكندرية/الدقهلية/القليوبية/بناتنا خارج 2018

21. Do you think that Filcher deserves to be arrested? Why/ Why not?

السويس/الفيوم/الأقصر 2018

22. What happened to Filcher?

شمال سيناء 2019

23. How did Ginger look like when she met Black Beauty again?

شمال سيناء 2019

24. Why did Black Beauty feel sorry for some of the taxi drivers and their horses?

سوهاج/الدقهلية/الاسماعيلية/اسيوط/كفر الشيخ/الشرقية 2018

25. How was Jerry kind to the poor woman?

الإسماعيلية/الشرقية 2018

سوهاج 2018

26. Why do you think that Jerry became ill?

الأقصر/بورسعيد 2019 / سوهاج/الدقهلية/كفر الشيخ 2018

سوهاج 2018

السؤال الخامس الاختياري 3 درجات

5- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Aya have won the prize. Really I'm sure.

a) might b) can't c) must d) should

إبنا في الخارج 2019

2. Cairo is a big city in

a) Greece b) Egypt c) Paris d) England

إبنا في الخارج 2019

3. Before the exam, Amr had studied hard.

a) passing b) passed c) pass d) had passed

إبنا في الخارج 2019

4. work in dangerous places.

a) Nurses b) firefighters c) teachers d) Writers

إبنا في الخارج 2019

5. The train to Tanta ... at 5 a.m. every day.

a) will leave b) would leave
c) is going to leave d) leaves

إبنا في الخارج 2019

6. Engineers wear to protect their heads in worksites.

a) gloves b) helmets c) jackets d) shoes

إبنا في الخارج 2019

7. Is the lake Nasser natural or

a) modern b) traditional
c) man-made d) personal

سوهاج 2018

8. How many eggs do the farmer's chickens each day?

a) lie b) give
c) lay d) put

اسوان 2019

9. The shop is for a new assistant. You can work there.

a) investing b) reading
c) arranging d) advertising

10. He is a He repairs cars.

a) mechanic b) cleaner
c) ticket inspector d) doctor

سوهاج 2018

11. Travelling by train is great way to see the of a country.

a) scenery b) journey
c) tickets d) station

بورسعيد/المنوفية 2018

12. Fatma understand the story if she read it carefully?

a) Would b) will
c) Would have d) Would be

المنوفية 2018

13. Some people become to using social networking sites.

a) addiction b) addicted
c) addict d) adding

المنوفية 2018

14. Some new shops opened near the school.

a) have be b) has be
c) has been d) have been

المنوفية 2018

15. A is a small piece of rock that is travelling through space.

a) shooting star
b) solar system
c) planet d) moon

المنوفية 2018

16. Our school Luxor next Monday, It's arranged.

a) visit b) is visiting
c) will visit d) visiting

اسوان 2018

17. Some students work in the holidays to some money.

a) spend b) lose
c) give d) earn

اسوان 2018

18. He asked me why late for school.

a) I am b) I was
c) was I d) I had

اسوان 2018

19. The Taj Mahal is a in India.

- a) monument b) minute
c) moment d) river

اسوان 2018

20. If I taller, I'd be good at basketball.

- a) am b) were
c) does d) been

اسوان 2018

21. My uncle is the of a factory.
he gives instructions to the workers.

- a) captain b) manager
c) mechanic d) secretary

اسوان 2018

22. We took a to cross from one side of the Nile to the other.

- a) train b) bicycle c) ferry d) car

الاقصر 2018

23. Nada looks very happy. She done well in her exam.

- a) mustn't have b) must have
c) would have d) should have

الاقصر 2018

24. My brother is the of the factory. He gives instructions to the workers.

- a) captain b) mechanic
c) secretary d) manager

الاقصر 2018

25. There is a big where the river goes over a cliff.

- a) fall b) waterfall
c) water drop d) water cycle

الاقصر 2018

26. If he read really carefully, he understand the book.

- a) can't b) don't
c) would d) won't

الاقصر 2018

27. I've cleaned the kitchen but the bed rooms cleaned yet.

- a) haven't been b) hasn't been
c) have been d) was been

الاقصر 2018

28. The tourist a taxi and asked the driver to take him to the hotel.

- a) got on b) got off
c) got into d) got out off

الاقصر 2018

29. I have my money to Alexandria Bank.

- a) arranged b) transferred
c) advertised d) travelled

الاقصر 2018

30. If she had read carefully, she understood the book.

- a) can b) would
c) will d) would have

الاقصر 2018

31. Many young people are to social networking sites.

- a) addicted b) regretted
c) changed d) stopped

الاقصر 2018

32. By 7 o'clock yesterday evening, I my lessons.

- a) have studied b) had studied
c) study d) am studying

الاقصر 2018

33. It is a good idea to ask a person for advice.

- a) greedy b) foolish
c) careless d) wise

الاقصر 2018

34. We took a to cross the Nile from one side to another.

- a) train b) bicycle c) ferry d) car

شمال سيناء 2019

35. Is Lake Nasser natural or?

- a) modern b) man-made c) traditional d) personal

شمال سيناء 2019

36. You can usually find trees and birds at an in the desert.

- a) art gallery b) adventure c) object d) oasis

شمال سيناء 2019

37. There are a lot of clouds in the sky. It

- a) is going to rain b) will rain
c) rain d) raining

شمال سيناء 2019

38. The dishes haven't washed yet.

- a) be b) being c) to be d) been

شمال سيناء 2019

39. We go to England if we had friends or a family there.

- a) would b) will c) won't d) were

شمال سيناء 2019

40. design buildings to work and live in.

- a) Inspectors b) Architects
c) Technicians d) Archaeologists

المنوفية 2019

41. By studying, scientists have worked out how long dinosaurs lived on earth.

- a) lizards b) meteorites c) fossils d) eruptions

المنوفية 2019

42. " " is the place you are travelling to.

- a) Theory b) Scenery
c) Journey d) Destination

المنوفية 2019

43. Shady works hard and does good researches on line. I know sure he will succeed.

- a) about b) for c) in d) with

المنوفية 2019

44. I can't find my calculator. I it at home.

- a) should have left b) might not have left
c) must have left d) shouldn't have left

المنوفية 2019

45. I need to choose a book quickly because the library at 4 o'clock. It's a daily time.

- a) closes b) has closed
c) will close d) closed

المنوفية 2019

46. If Rana had more free time, she read more books in English.

- a) would have b) would c) will d) must

السويس 2019

47. Some students work in the holidays to some money.

- a) spend b) lose
c) give d) earn

السويس 2019

48. My uncle is the of the factory. He gives instructions to workers.

- a) captain b) manager
c) mechanic d) secretary

السويس 2019

49. My brother broke his phone and needs someone to it.

- a) repair b) make
c) explain d) report

السويس 2019

50. Ahmed asked me what doing yesterday at 4 o'clock.

- a) was I b) am I
c) I was d) I am

السويس 2019

51. It is hot today. It must be about 40

- a) dots b) metres
c) degrees d) marks

السويس 2019

السؤال السادس اعد كتابة الجمل مستخدما الكلمة بين
الاقواس 3 درجات

1. Hoda said, "did you do your homework? (if)

.....
.....

إبتائنا في الخارج 2019

2. First we booked the tickets, then we went to the concert. (before)

.....
.....

إبتائنا في الخارج 2019

3. They have painted the building again. (been)

.....
.....

إبتائنا في الخارج 2019

4. "Sit down , please" said the teacher to the students. (ordered)

.....
.....

شمال سيناء 2019

5. I tried the fish at the restaurant, but I regret it. (shouldn't)

.....
.....

شمال سيناء/اسوان 2019

6. Adel's arm hurts. perhaps he broke it. (might)

.....
.....

شمال سيناء 2019

7. She punished her son because he had not told the truth. (If)

.....

.....

8. He always helps his friends. (helpful)

.....

.....

أسبوط 2019

9. I didn't bring my phone ,so I didn't call you. (If)

.....

.....

أسبوط 2019

10. " Will you finish your homework before dinner"

(Kareem asked his sister)

.....

.....

المنوفية 2018

11. After we had visited the museum, we had lunch.

(until)

الشرقية/المنوفية 2018

12. I am sure that he travelled by bus. (must)

.....

.....

13. First we booked the tickets. Then we went to the concert. (before)

.....

.....

14. Hany`s arm hurts. perhaps he broke it. (might)

.....

.....

القاهرة 2018

15. "Stand up, please" the teacher said to Ali. (ordered)

.....

الدقهلية 2018

16. I didn't recognize your cousin so I didn't say hello. (If)

.....

.....

القاهرة 2018

17. " You must stop smoking," the doctor said to Ali (advised)

.....

.....

الجيزة 2018

18. After we had visited the museum, we decided to have lunch. (until)

.....

.....

الإسكندرية 2018

السؤال السابع والاخير البرجراف او الایمیل 5 درجات
الوظيفة التي تتمناها في المستقبل

1-The job you would like to do

TO	Azza2019@gmail.com
From	Sarah2030@yahoo.com
Subject	The job I wish to have in the future

Hi Azza,

It pleases me to write this email to you.
How are you? I'd like to tell you about the
job I like most. I want to be a doctor in the
future. I like helping poor patients. Also, I
hope to complete my study in medicine
abroad. I like forward to inventing a new
medicine to cancer.

Best Wishes
Sarah

القاهرة 2018 ابناننا في الخارج/اسيوط 2019

عجائب العالم القديم-2

2-The wonders of the ancient world

Most of the wonders of the ancient world were
statues or temples. Long ago, the ancient Greek wrote a
list of them. They were amazing places. Some of them
were in Greece, ,Iraq, Giza and Alexandria. Two of
them were in Egypt. They are the great pyramid and
the lighthouse of Alexandria. The Great Pyramid is the
most fantastic one

3-A visit to the great pyramid

I went on a school trip with my friend to the Great
Pyramid. It was an amazing day. The great pyramid is
one of the most important wonders of the world. It's
137 metres high. It contains amazing rooms. See you
soon.

اسوان/سوهاج 2018

4-Social networking sites مواقع التواصل

It pleases me to write thus email. How are you? I want
to tell you about the importance of social networking
sites. Egypt ,for example, has nearly 50 million users for
these sites. It's very important to make new friends.
Also, they help in exchanging ideas between different
groups of people. It allows us to send messages to a lot
of people at the same time.

اسوان 2019

واحد من عجائب العالم الحديث (تاج محل)

5- One the modern wonders of the world

Taj Mahal in India is one of the modern wonders.
It is a white marble monument. It was built by the ruler
of India to remember his wife. Tourists like to visit it. I
hope to visit it in the future.

الاسماعيلية/الشرقية/الإسكندرية 2018

What you can do on a smart phone.

ابناتنا في الخارج 2019

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

☐ A journey you want to go☐ The job of a doctor

شمال سيناء 2019

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

☐ A place you would like to visit اسيوط 2019☐ An animal that you like السويس 2019

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

☐ A visit to Luxor and Aswan

بورسعيد 2019

.....
.....
.....

اطيب وارق الامنيات بالنجاح

المراجعة النهائية للصف الثالث الإعدادي ترم ثاني ٢٠٢١

امتحان مراجعة على المنهج

تم الاعداد بواسطة **مستر محمد فوزي**

السؤال الاول (المحادثة)

للمحادثة اى اجابات مقبولة

1- Finish the following dialogue

1-A man is buying a ticket at a train station PT 4A

Man : Good morning. (1) Can I book a ticket to Luxor, please?
Assistant : To Luxor? Of course. (2) Would you like a single or a return ?
Man : A return, please. I'm coming back on Tuesday
Assistant : That's LE100. The next train leaves in 30 minutes.
Man : (3) Could you tell me which platform the train leaves from?
Assistant : The train leaves from platform 2.
Man : (4) Platform 2? Thank you very much

2-Nevine and Lamia are at the ticket office of a museum. PT 4 B

Assistant : Unfortunately, the museum is closed today.
Nevine : Oh no. (1) What a pity!! I didn't know that.
Assistant : Didn't you look at the website? It has all the times there.
Nevine : I'll look next time (2) When are you open/When can we visit the museum?
Assistant : You can come any other day, but I don't recommend Saturday.
Nevine : (3) Why shouldn't we visit on Saturday?
Assistant : Because it is difficult to see things since there are so many people!
Nevine : (4) Perhaps we can come tomorrow
Assistant : Tomorrow is perfect

3-Some students are asking a scientist about space. PT 5A

Noha : (1). Could you tell me how fast the earth turns ?
Scientist : Yes, of course. The earth turns at about 1,670 kilometres an hour.
Ola : (2) I wonder if you could tell me if all planets have moons
Scientist : No, but most of them do have moons.
Noha : What did you ask the scientist, Ola? (3) I asked the scientist if all planets had moons
Maya : There are many things that nobody knows about space. Do you agree?
scientist : (4) I agree with you. However, we are trying to learn more!

4-Amal and Lamia are talking about a man's journey along the Nile. PT 6A

Amal : In the news, it says that a man has walked all the way along the Nile.
Lamia : Yes, I heard about this. It's unusual! (1) Why did he do it ?
Amal : He did it because he wanted to see if it was possible.
Lamia : I heard that at the beginning of the journey, he was very ill, but (2) he got better.
Amal : (3) That's good. Is he going to write about his journey himself ?
Lamia : Yes, he said he would. It will probably be a very interesting journal to read.
Amal : (4) I agree with you..

4- A basketball player is visiting a school. PT 5B

Teacher : Today, a famous basketball player is visiting our school. This is Captain Tarek. (1) could you answer some of the students' questions?
Captain Tarek : Of course. What questions would the students like to ask?
Ali : My friends say that I will never be good at basketball because I'm not very tall. Is that right?
Captain Tarek : (2) I'm afraid I disagree. . You don't have to be tall. When I started playing , I was one of the smallest boys in the class!
Basel : (3). Then what happened/What happened after that?
Captain Tarek : I became the best basketball player in the class because I always trained very hard.
Basel : Do you think one day I might be as good as you
Captain Tarek : (4) you might be!

6- Fawzy and Mazin are speaking about a dangerous hobby PT 6 B

Fawzy : Look at this photograph in the magazine: A man is standing on top of a very tall building.
Mazin : Really? (1) Why is he doing that ?
Fawzy : The magazine says it's his hobby.
Mazin : (2). He shouldn't do that/he there. It's dangerous..
Fawzy : I couldn't agree with you more. The police should stop him.
Mazin : (3) What else does it say ?
Fawzy : It also says that the police arrested him.
Mazin : (4). Oh dear.

7- Mona asks Sahar about what she is going to do in the evening.

Mona : Good afternoon, Sahar,
Sahar : Good afternoon, Mona.
Mona : (1) What are you going to do in the evening ? Where are you going in the evening?
Sahar : I'm going to the airport this evening.
Mona : (2) Why are you going there?
Sahar : To meet my father. He's coming from Kuwait.
Mona : (3) When will he arrive? /When will his plane arrive?
Sahar : His plane will arrive at 10 pm.
Mona : I hope he arrives safely.
Sahar : (4) Thanks a lot.

8-man is buying a ticket at a train station

Passenger : Good morning. I'd like a return ticket to Cairo, please.(1) What time is the next train?
Assistant : The next train is at 9.30.
Passenger : How much is that, please?
Assistant : (2) It's 30 pounds.
Passenger : (3) How long does it take?
Assistant : It takes about two hours.
Passenger : Could you tell me which platform the train leaves from?
Assistant : (4) platform 2. Have a nice journey.

9. Hassan asks his friend Ali about his last visit to Aswan

Mr Mohamed Fawzy

Ali : Hi, Hassan! How are you doing?
Hassan : Hi! Great. **(1) Where have you been?**
Ali : I've been to Aswan with my family.
Hassan : **(2) Which train did you take?**
Ali : We took the sleeper train.
Hassan : Why do you usually go in the first class?
Ali : **(3) because it is comfortable and to enjoy the journey**
Hassan : How do you book tickets?
Ali : **(4) online** . It sounds easy
Hassan : Eventually, How do you like it?
Ali : Wonderful. We all enjoyed it a lot.

10. Ahmed and Noha are talking about life in the countryside.

Ahmed : Some people think that life in the country is getting worse and worse. What do you think?
Noha : **(1) I disagree with them.**
Ahmed : But can you find all your needs there?
Noha : **(2) of course, You can find everything you need there**
Ahmed : **(3) Do you think people are friendly there ?**
Noha : **Sure, Most people there are friendly**
Ahmed : **(4) What do you think about the city?**
Ahmed : The city is always noisy and there is much pollution.

11-A teacher is talking to a student who is late for school.

student : Excuse me, may I come in?
teacher : Yes, stand here. **(1) Why do you always come late?**
student : I always come late because of the bus.
teacher : **(2) When do you leave home?**
student : I always leave home at quarter to eight
teacher : **(3) it's too late. You should leave early.**
student : OK. From tomorrow, I'll leave home a bit earlier. Can I sit now, sir?
teacher : **(4) yes, of course**

12. Ahmed is phoning to book a ticket to London.

Ahmed : Hello! Is this Egypt air office?
Assistant : Yes, sir. **(1) How can I help you?**
Ahmed : I want to book a ticket to London, please
Assistant : **(2) Would you like a single or a return?/ single or return?**
Ahmed : A return ticket , please.
Assistant : **(3) ok. I will book it for you**
Ahmed : How much does it cost?
Assistant : **(4) it cost 2000 pounds**
Ahmed : Thank you. I'll send you my visa number

13- Ayman is at the doctor's.

The doctor : What's wrong with you Mr. Ayman?
Ayman : I can't breathe well and I cough all the time.
The doctor : **(1) Are you a heavy smoker ? Do you smoke?**
Ayman : Yes, I'm a heavy smoker.
The doctor : Unfortunately, smoking has made you a lung disease.
Ayman : **(2) What should I do?**
The doctor : you should stop smoking right now.
Ayman : so if I stopped smoking, would I be better?
The doctor : **(3) yes, you'd be better./ Yes, of course**
Ayman : What else do you advise me to do?
The doctor : **(4) you should practice some sports./ I advise you to do sports.**
Ayman : OK. I will start from tomorrow. Sport will make me stronger

14. Atef and Adel are talking about Stem School.

Atef : Have you ever heard about STEM schools?
Adel : **(1) yes, I have**
Atef : **(2) What does it deal with/represent?**
Adel : It represents Science, Technology, Engineering and Maths.
Atef : **(3) How do the teachers help the students?**
Adel : Teachers help the students through the projects they do.
Atef : Do you think there will be more STEM schools in Egypt in the future?
Adel : **(4) Yes, I think so. Thanks a lot Atef.**
Atef : you are welcome, Adel

15- Amr is going to meet his friends today

Father : What are you going to do with your friends?
Amr : We want to have a picnic but we don't know where to go.
Father : **(1) What place do you suggest ? Where do you suggest we go?**
Amr : The zoo is a nice place for a picnic.
Nice. What can I take for the picnic?
Father : **(2) you can take some sandwiches and cakes**
Amr : That's a good idea. **(3) Should I take a hat ?**
Father : Sure. The sun is very strong today.
Amr : **(4) Thank you** . See you.

16. Nada is telling Sara about her friend who lives in New York.

Nada : I have a friend who lives in New York.
Sara : Really? **(1) How do you communicate with her?**
Nada : I communicate with her using social media.
Sara : Do you use your laptop?
Nada : No. **(2) I use my mobile phone**
Sara : It sounds good. **(3) What can you do, too ?**
Nada : I can send messages and take photos.
Sara : good .I think I'll **(4) do the same thing/try to find some pen friends, too**

السؤال الثاني (المواقف) Mr Mohamed Fawzy

هذه المواقف اللغوية مفيدة في الإجابة على سؤال المحادثة والمواقف

Buying/Booking a train ticket شراء وحجز التذاكر

Can I book a single / return (ticket to Alexandria), please? هل ممكن اشترى تذكرة الى....من فضلك؟

Would you like first or second class? هل تريد تذكرة درجة أولى أم ثانية؟

How long does (the express/stopping train) take? كم المدة التي يستغرقها القطار السريع أو المتوقف بالمحطات؟

How much is that, please? كم ثمن هذا من فضلك؟

Could you tell me which platform the train leaves from? هل يمكن أن تخبرني من أي رصيف يغادر القطار؟

expressing past recommendations التعبير عن التوصيات في الماضي

I think you should have tried (the pizza) last night. كان من المفروض أن تجرب البيتزا.

You shouldn't have drunk (so much coffee) yesterday. لم يكن من المفروض أن تشرب كثير من القهوة.

explaining a choice in the past تبرير / شرح اختيار في الماضي

I really didn't want to (eat pizza). It's not healthy. حقًا لم أكن أريد أن (أتناول بيتزا) لأنها غير صحية. I wasn't interested, thanks. لم أكن مهتمًا شكرًا.

Making opinions stronger تقوية الرأي

quite / very / really / extremely للغاية إلى حد ما

These people can be quite angry if their train is late.

A railway station manager's job is very important.

Asking polite questions السؤال بطريقة مهذبة

► Could you please explain to me why (I can't feel the earth turn)؟....هل يمكن أن توضح لي؟

→ Do you think we could (come and see the observatory one day)؟...هل تعتقد أننا يمكن أن...؟

☒ I'd like to know if (you like your job). أود أن أعرف.

→ I wonder if you could tell me what (a star is made of). أَسْأَلُ لَوْ يُمْكِنُ أَنْ تُخْبِرَنِي.

Asking for opinion السؤال عن الرأي

What do you think of (the Sphinx)?

How do you feel about (the Cairo Tower)?

Do you agree?

What is your opinion of/about (شيء)؟

Giving opinion إعطاء الرأي

I think it is/they are.....

In my opinion

I don't think it's right to.....

Agreeing الاتفاق

I agree with you

I couldn't agree with you more.

That's (exactly) how I feel.

Disagreeing عدم الاتفاق

- I'm afraid I (totally) disagree.

- I feel completely the opposite

I disagree with you

encouraging people to continue speaking تشجيع الناس على اكمال الكلام

Great! What else does it say? عظيم ماذا يقول

Really? Go on. حقًا استمر

How wonderful! Tell me more. رائع أخبرني المزيد

Then what happened? ثم ماذا حدث

What happened after that? ماذا حدث بعد ذلك؟

Responding to news الرد على الاخبار

⇒How wonderful! /what good new!

عند سماع أخبار جيدة

⇒Really! I can't believe it!

good news

⇒Oh dear! /what bad news

عند سماع أخبار سيئة

⇒Oh no!

bad news

⇒How terrible!

Giving dates you are not sure ofأعطاء تواريخ لسنا متأكدين منها

⇒(Dinosaurs lived) **about** 65 million years ago.

⇒ (We think that people first lived) **maybe** 250,000 years ago

⇒ (I'm going to talk to you **about** some people who lived) **almost** 8,000 years ago.

⇒In **around** 8,000 BCE, (people began farming in North Africa)

Showing relief الشعور بالراحة

Phew!

What a relief!

Thank goodness for that!

Showing excitement الشعور بالارتياح أو الاطمئنان

Great!

I can't wait!

I'm looking forward to that.

2-Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

Practice Test

1- You have just finished the hardest test that you have ever done. Your mother asks you how the test was. **It was extremely/incredibly difficult.**

2- You are taking a bus from Cairo to Alexandria. You want to know how long you will spend on the bus. **How long does the bus take?**

3- You wanted to go to the beach today, but your parents say that it is too windy. **I wish that it was not windy./What a pity that it is windy.**

4- You visited England in the winter. It was the coldest place that you have been. A friend asks you what the weather was like. **It was incredibly/extremely cold.**

5- You want to book a ticket for the train from Cairo to Luxor. You are coming back on Thursday. **Can I book a return ticket to Luxor, please?**

6- You see a news report about poor people who live in Asia. You would like to be able to help them. **I wish that I could help these people.**

7 -You would like to ask a teacher when he / she started working at the school.

I wonder if you could tell me when you started working at the school.

8- A friend says that he / she thinks that the last lesson was the most interesting that you have had

I couldn't agree with you more. / I'm afraid I disagree.

9- A friend starts to read you an interesting news story, but then suddenly stops.

Go on./What else does it say?

10- You would like to ask a teacher to explain why it is colder in the winter than in the summer.

Could you please explain to me why it is colder in the winter than in the summer?

11- You think that this lesson is very interesting. You want to know what your friend thinks of it.

What do you think of this lesson?/How do you feel about this lesson?

12- A friend tells you that he / she had an interesting morning. First, he / she went to the park. You want to know more. **(Tell me more./Go on.**

13- Your friend asks you when your father was born. You aren't sure, but you give an answer. **(Maybe in 1977./About 40 years ago.)**

14- You hear that a tourist was lost in the desert, but that he has just been found.

What a relief! / Phew!

15- You hear that scientists have found a new medicine which will help many people. **(How wonderful!**

16- Your parents say that they are taking you to the beach tomorrow.

Great!/I can't wait!/I'm looking forward to that.

17- You see people leaving rubbish on a beach.

How terrible! Why do they do this?

18- A friend tells you that you have won a prize.

Really? I can't believe it!/How wonderful!

Work book /previous exams

19. You want to buy a train ticket to Aswan.

Can I book a(single) ticket to Aswan , please?

20. You want to know how long the journey to Alexandria takes

How long does the journey to Alexandria take?

21.you want to know which platform the train leaves from

Could you tell me which platform the train leaves from?

22.Your classmate is trying to persuade you to go to the club, but you refuse.

Thanks, I am not interested in it

23. Your friend is addicted to smoking. Advise him.

You should stop smoking. It damages health.

24. A friend was up late as he drank much coffee. Make past recommendation

You shouldn't have drunk so much coffee yesterday.

25. You are asked about the disadvantages of smoking.

It damages health. it causes heart and lung diseases.

26.You smoked a cigarette and now you feel ill. You regret it.

I shouldn't have smoked a cigarette.

27. Your brother did very badly in the exam.

You should have studied hard/revised well for the exam.

28.A friend asks you about an interesting film you have both have just watched.

The film is really interesting.

29.You express your strong opinion of the electrician's job.

I think the electrician's job is really important.

30. You would like to ask a teacher to explain why it is colder in winter than in summer

Could you please explain to me why it is colder in the winter than in the summer?

31. Ask your teacher politely what a star is made of.

Could you please explain what a star is made of

32. Ask your father politely about his plan for the summer holiday

Could you tell me what you plan to do in the summer holiday?

33. You ask your teacher when he started working at this school.

I wonder if you could tell me when you started working at the school.

34. You ask your teacher about the moral of the story Black Beauty.

Could you please tell me what the moral of the story is?

35. You would like to ask your friend when he started working at hospital.

Could you tell me when you started working at the hospital?

36. You want to know a tourist's opinion about the pyramids.

What is your opinion about the pyramids?

37. Your friend says that the waterfalls are amazing. you completely agree.

I agree with you./ I couldn't agree with you more

38. Someone thinks that Wadi Rayyan waterfalls are man-made wonders.

I totally disagree.

39. Your sister says that the food you both had was tasty. You agree.

I agree with you./ That's exactly how I feel

40. Noha tells you about an exciting film. you want to know more.

Tell me more./Go on.

41. A friend starts to read you an interesting news story, but then suddenly stops.

Go on./What else does it say?

42.Your cousin said that she had a busy day yesterday. Ask why.

What happened after that?

43. You are with your friend on a bus when you find a watch on the floor.

Excuse me! This is your watch.

44. You broke a window during a game, what would you say?

I'm really sorry. here is some money to repair it

45. You borrowed your friend's phone and you broke it.

I broke your phone. I'm really sorry

46.. You need to borrow your friend's laptop.

Can I borrow your laptop, please?

47. You hear that scientists have found a new medicine which **Mr Mohamed Tawfik** helped many people.

How wonderful!

48. Your friend said a snake had escaped from the zoo and nobody knew where it was. Respond to this news.

How terrible!

49. A friend asks you when the first car was made.

I think it was maybe 150 years ago.

50. Your cousin asks you when your school was built.

It was built about 20 years ago.

51. Your teacher asks you for the age of the oldest part of Cairo. This was built around 1000 CE

It was built in around 1000 CE

52. You're asked when dinosaurs first lived. You aren't sure of the answer

They lived about 65 million years ago

53. Grandma tells you that your friend can come to the family party on Saturday

Great!/I can't wait!/I'm looking forward to that.

54. The news said that a bad storm is coming, but now they say it has moved away.

!thank goodness for that! /hat a relief

55. You are asked about your destination.

I'm going to Aswan

56. You think tennis is very exciting. You persuade your sister to try it.

I think you should really try playing tennis.

57. The train didn't come on time. Your father asks you how the people were there.

People were really angry.

58. Your mother tells you that there was a fire on your neighbour's shop.

Oh no! How terrible!

59. Your friend Azza tells you that her oldest cousin is going to have a baby.

How wonderful.

60. You hear that a ship sank in the sea but the police saved the passengers.

Thank goodness for that!

61. You would like to ask a friend what his favourite hobby is.

Could you tell me what your favourite hobby is?

62. You are asked about your opinion of Cairo tower.

In my opinion, it's amazing.

السؤال الثالث (قطعة الخبز)

Hi Ragab,

I am very sorry that I didn't come to your house yesterday. I'll tell you why. I left home to catch the bus at four o'clock. The bus broke down and did not arrive, so I waited for the next **one**, which was at half past four. The bus arrived, but before I got on the bus, an old man came out of a shop. He was carrying some heavy bags. The bus driver told me to help him with his bags. He thought that the man wanted to get on the bus. I offered to help him, but he asked me to carry the bags to his car. I carried his bags and put them in his car **boot**. I did not catch the bus at half past four. I was too late to go to your house so I didn't wait for the five o'clock bus. I was not happy when I got home, but my father told me that I was kind to help the old man.

Best wishes, Taha

A) Answer the following questions:

1- Why didn't Taha catch the bus at four o'clock?

because the bus broke down and did not arrive.

2- Why do you think that the bus driver did not wait for Taha?

Because Taha spent a long time helping the old man with his bags.

3- Why was Taha not happy when he went home?

Because it was too late to go to Ragab's house

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- What does the underlined word one refer to?

a Ragab's house b Taha's house **c the next bus** d the bus at five o'clock

5- What do you think the word boot means?

a **a space for bags in a car** b a kind of boat c a kind of car d a place to keep cars

In the last few years, I have travelled on some of the world's longest train journeys. First, I went on the longest train journey in the world. Taking nearly a week, it goes from Moscow to the east of Russia. My mother thought that I would be bored, but I loved it. Then a friend advised me to take the train from Shanghai to Lhasa in China. It takes about two days. People warned me that the train goes incredibly high into the mountains and it can be difficult to breathe, but I had no problems. Finally, I travelled in Australia from Perth to Sydney. Taking the world's straightest railway for four days was **unforgettable**. I travelled on my own. However, I have encouraged some of my friends to come with me next time.

A) Answer the following questions:

1- How long is the world's longest train journey? **It takes nearly a week.**

2 Why do you think that his mother thought he would be bored?

Because it is a very long journey and there might not be very much to do on the train

3 What does the underlined word it refer to? **The train from Shanghai to Lhasa.**

4 What do you think the word unforgettable means?

a easy to remember b easy to forget c boring d no

5 This passage is about.....

a the journey from Moscow to the east of Russia **b train journeys**
c the trouble with travelling d the journey in Australia

Mars has been studied for hundreds of years. Astronomers say that it is the planet which is most like the earth. A day on Mars is nearly the same as it is on earth. It lasts for 24 hours and 39 minutes. However, a year lasts for one year and 320 days, so a year on Mars is almost twice as long as a year on earth. If you looked at Mars through a telescope, you might see a very big mountain. It is more than 20 kilometres high. That is three times as big as Everest! Scientists say that if you went to Mars, you might find water under the surface. However, living on Mars would not be easy. In summer, the temperature is usually minus 5°C and in winter it can be minus 82°C

1- What is the main idea of this passage?

It gives information about the planet Mars.

2- What do scientists think might be on the planet Mars that people could use?

They think that there might be water.

3- Can you think of three reasons why it would not be possible to live on Mars?

It is very cold in winter and very hot in summer. There might not be any water. There is probably no air to

4- What does the underlined word it refer to?

a Mars b a day on Mars c a year on earth d a year on Mars

5- What do you think that the word surface means?

a the sea b the clouds c the top of the ground d the biggest rivers

A tourist has been found after spending five days in the desert. He went for a walk and must have got lost. He was delighted when a farmer found him. The farmer gave him water and told him that he should have taken a phone and lots of water into the desert. Then the farmer took him to a hospital. When he got there, a doctor advised him to sleep and drink lots of water, but said that he was not hurt. We interviewed the tourist when he got home. He asked us to thank the farmer and the doctors. He said that if he went to the desert again, he would be much more careful.

1- What happened to the tourist when he went for a walk?

He must have got lost

2- Why do you think the farmer said that he should have taken a phone?

He should have taken a phone because then he could call someone if he had problems

3- What did the doctor say that the tourist should do?

The doctor advised him to sleep and drink lots of water.

4- What do you think the word delighted means?

a very sad b very thirsty c very happy d very ill

5- What does the underlined word there refer to?

a the desert b the farm c the hospital d the man's home

السؤال الرابع (القصة)

A	B
1-black beauty (b)	a- liked the latest fashion.
2- Ginger (c)	b- was the horse which Lady Anne liked to ride.
3-York (e)	c- said, "If they don't tighten the reins more, I will do what they ask me."
4- lady smythe (a)	d- as much smaller than Earl Smythe's house at Earlshall Park
	e- was Earl Smythe's helper..

A	B
1-black beauty (e)	a- was accused of stealing the horses' food
2- Mr Barry (d)	b- suggested buying good food for Black Beauty for a few weeks.
3-Mr Barry's friend (b)	c- said, "If they cannot pull a carriage, we must sell them.
4- Flicher (a)	d- was a rich man who bought Black Beauty.
	e- was taken to a market for horses

A	B
1-Jerry Barker (b)	a- always helped to look after Black Beauty and worked hard
2- Captain (c)	b- was the best owner and a kind taxi driver.
3- Jerry's son, Harry (a)	c-was the horse that went out with the taxi carriage in the morning
4- Black Beauty (e)	d- examined Black Beauty carefully.
	e- was pleased with his new owner.

A	B
1-Polly (c)	a- believed that a pound wouldn't help if it made the horse tired
2- Ginger (d)	b- was given food before walking for many kilometres.
3- Jerry (a)	c-was Jerry's wife.
4- Black Beauty (b)	d- wasn't able to run very fast after the fall.
	e- was Jerry's son..

A	B
1-The doctor (e)	a- had easier work in the end..
2- Skinner (d)	b- took Black Beauty to a large field to give him good food.
3- Mr Thorough good(b)	c-had no problems all his life.
4- Black Beauty (a)	d- was also a taxi driver
	e- told Jerry that he should stop driving a taxi.

b. Answer the following questions Practice Test

1- In what ways was Earlishall Park better than Birtwick Park?

It was bigger and more modern

2- Why do you think Lady Smythe used special reins to keep the horses' heads held high?

Because it was the latest fashion

3- Why do you think it was very difficult for the horses to pull the carriage up a hill?

Because they could not put their heads down when they were wearing the reins

4- Do you think that Ginger was right to start to kick? Why / Why not?

Yes, because she was very uncomfortable./No. She should have worked hard like Black Beauty.

5 How do we know that York cared about Ginger and Black Beauty?

We know that York cared about them because he was angry that they wore the special reins. He helped them when they were hurt.

6- in your opinion, what was the problem with the reins that Lady Smythe wanted the horses to wear?

they were very uncomfortable and it was difficult to pull a carriage up a hill with them on.

7-How do you think Ginger and Black Beauty become hurt?

They fell to the ground and had to be cut from the carriage.

8-Do you think that Black Beauty was angry with Ginger because he was hurt? Why? / Why not?

No because he realised that Ginger only did this because the reins were uncomfortable.

9- What do you think Filcher did with Black Beauty's food?

He took it home to give to his rabbits.

10- Why do you think that Earl Smythe said that he might not get much money for Ginger?

Because Ginger's knees were badly damaged. She also does not always do what her owners want

11- why do you think Black Beauty found it difficult about his first few days in London?

There was a lot of noise and a lot of people and it was difficult for him to find his way between the carriages

12 Why did Black Beauty think that Jerry was the best owner he had had?

Because he gave Black Beauty good food and fresh water, he was kind to him and he was a good driver.

13 Why did Black Beauty feel sorry for some of the taxi drivers and their horses?

Because they had to work for very long hours to get enough money.

14 Why do you think that each of Ginger's owners paid less money for her?

Because she was becoming weaker and weaker, so she could not work very well.

15 Do you think that people were always happy to have Jerry as a taxi driver? Why? / Why not?

He was probably not popular with everyone, because he did not always do what people asked him to do.

16- How do you think Jerry described Black Beauty to his daughter?

He said that he was as gentle as she was.

17- Why did Black Beauty stop finding it difficult to pull a taxi in London?

Because he began to trust Jerry.

18- Why do you think that Jerry took Captain to work on Black Beauty's first morning in London?

I think he did not want Black Beauty to have a difficult first day

19- Why did Ginger stop kicking people who weren't good to her?

Because she was not strong enough to kick any more.

20- How do we know that Jerry was a kind man?

We know that Jerry is kind because he took the woman to hospital when he saw that she needed help

21 –Do you think holidays were always an easy time for taxi drivers?

No , Because they had a lot of work taking people from house to house.

22- in your opinion What happened to Jerry when he had to wait outside the house of a rich man?

He became ill because it was very cold.

23- in your opinion ,Why did Polly write to Mrs Fowler?

Jerry could not drive taxis any more, so Polly wanted to find work for him.

24- Why do you think that Skinner told the girl not to worry after she said that Black Beauty looked too weak their bags?

I think Skinner told the girl not to worry because he didn't want to lose money. He had to work for seven week to get enough money, even when his horses were weak or ill.

25- Why do you think that Black Beauty was sold at the part of the market where the horses were old or ill-looking?

Because Black Beauty had been ill and now he looked old.

26-Why do you think that Jerry became ill?

He had to wait outside the house of a rich man and it was very cold.

27- Why do you think that Black Beauty was worried when Jerry found work with Mrs Fowler?

Because he was becoming old and he knew that he might have more difficult work to do in the future.

28- why do you think Skinner was a bad owner?

. He was a bad owner because he worked seven days a week and never gave his horses rest or enough to eat.

29 -What happened when Black Beauty tried to pull the carriage up a hill?

He fell onto the ground and thought that he was going to die.

30- Why do you think Black Beauty didn't recognise Joe Green at first?

Because he was now a tall, strong man.

31-Do you think Filcher deserved to be arrested? Why?

Yes, because he stole Black Beauty's food

32.Why do you think it is important to look after working animals carefully?

Because they work much better when they are given good food and are looked after well.

33.Why do you think it's important to watch animals workers carefully?

To make sure they are honest.

34.Why did mr Barry sell black beauty?

As he felt bad after the bad behaviour of filcher.

35.What do you think mr Barry's friend advised him to do?

He advised him to give the horse some food for the following few weeks and to watch filcher.

36.Do you think Harry and dolly helped to look after black beauty?

Yes, Harry always helped to look after him and dolly came to see him often.

37.Why do you think black beauty liked jerry parker?

Why did Black Beauty think that Jerry was the best owner he had had?

Because he gave Black Beauty good food and fresh water, he was kind to him and he was a good driver.

38.Why didn't jerry go fast for the passengers who wanted to catch a train?

He didn't want black beauty to be tired, because then he couldn't do a good job later in the day.

39.What do you think life was like for a horse that pulled taxis in London at this time?
 There was a lot of noise and a lot of people and it was difficult for a horse to find his way between the carriage.

40.Do you think black beauty felt sorry for ginger? Why ? why not?

Yes, because she looked very thin and very old.

41.What do you think of the two men who jumped into the taxi in front of the poor woman?

I think it was rude to do that because she was carrying her small son and wanted to go to the hospital.

42.Do you think that people were always happy to have Jerry as a taxi driver? Why? / Why not?

He was probably not popular with everyone, because he did not always do what people asked him to do.

43.How do you think Jerry was kind to the poor woman?

He told her that he would give her a ride for free.

44.Why wasn't black beauty put into a carriage for three days?

Because Jerry was too ill to take him out for work.

45.How do you think black beauty felt when Jerry found work with Mrs. Fowler?

It was bad news for him. He knew that they would sell him.

46.What do you think Skinner decided to do? Why?

He decided to sell black beauty as he thought beauty was no good if he couldn't work

47.How did black beauty feel when he was sold with old ill-looking horses? why?

He didn't think anyone would like to buy him as the people were poor.

48.Do you think Mr. Thoroughgood changed his opinion about black beauty? Why?

Yes, He was pleased that he bought him.

He said that he was a good horse and not old at all

49.What do you think might have happened if black beauty continued to work for Skinner for a long time?

I think he would get very tired or perhaps ill.

50.Do you think that Skinner was a bad owner? Why?

Yes, as he made black beauty work for seven days a week without rest.

51.Why do you think that Skinner makes beauty work so hard?

Perhaps he thinks that black beauty is a strong, healthy horse and he can do hard work

52. In your opinion, What did you learn from "black beauty"? or What is the moral of the story?

We should be kind and understanding towards animals

Important voc

destination	وجهة الوصول	carriage	عربة قطار	misprint	خطا طباعي
scenery	مناظر طبيعية	Air conditioning	تكييف الهواء	misread	يسء قراءة
carriage	عربة في قطار	journey	رحلة طويلة	Keep out	يبعد
meeting	مقابلة	ferry	معدية	On the new list	في القائمة الجديدة
booking	حجز	Sleeper train	قطار النوم	For this reason	لهذا السبب
return ticket	تذكرة ذهاب وعودة	Get into Get out of	يدخل في يخرج من تاكسي/سيارة	Remind of	يذكر ب
economy	درجة اقتصادية	successful	ناجح	The latest	الاحداث
recommend	يوصي بـ	persuade	يقنع	development	التنمية
regret	يندم	addicted to	مدمن ل	advertise	يعلن
Look forward to	يتطلع الى	melt	يذوب	Cause of	السبب ل

instead of	بدلا من	pass	ينجح -	advertisement	اعلان
Proud of	فتخور ب	lungs	الرئتين	arrange	يرتب
organ	عضو	operation	عملية جراحية	Transfer money	ينقل مال
rude	وقح	natural	طبيعي	Scientific	علمي
For sure	بالتاكيد	physical	جسدي	scam	احتيال
lung	رئة	disease	مرض	report	تقرير
cleaner	عامل نظافة	Work on a project	مشروع في	robber	حرامي
mechanic	ميكانيكي	technical	فني	Internet users	مستخدمي الانترنت
architect	مهندس معماري	graduate	يتخرج / خريج	process	عملية
inspector	مفتش	industry	الصناعة	Privacy settings	اعدادات الخصوصية
especially	خصوصا	Look out for	يحتس من	Pay for	يدفع ل
general	عام	skill	مهارة	archaeologist	عالم آثار
experience	خبرة	percent	في المئة	terrible	فظيلع
helmet	خوذة	Travel through	يسافر عبر	digital	رقمي
meteorite	نيازك	wonders	عجائب	Social networking sites	مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي
observatory	مرصد فلكي	waterfalls	شلال	moral	مغزى القصة
astronomy	علم الفلك	statues	تماثيل	grasshopper	جراد صغير
astronomer	عالم فلك	temples	معابد	Collect (for)	يجمع ل
Solar system	النظام الشمسي	monuments	آثار	content	مسرور/مراضى /محتوى
Shooting stars	شهب	oasis	واحة	foolish	احمق
planet	كوكب	original	اصلى	refuse	يرفض/قمامة
shape	شكل	marble	رخام	goose	اوزة
burn	يحترق	ruler	حاكم	golden	ذهبي
disappear	يختفي	fountain	نافورة	Lay (laid-lain)	تبيض
degree	درجة	dome	قببة	Man-made	صناعي
explain	يفسر	minarets	ماذن	The earth	كوكب الارض
wonder	يتساءل	art galley	معرض رسم	psychological	نقسي
On the moon	على سطح القمر	delighted	مسرور	warn	يحذر
Pick up	يلتقط	volcano	بركان	relief	راحة
greedy	طماع	smoke	دخان	excitement	اثارة
advice	نصيحة	dust	غبار	sailfish	سمكة ابو سراع
borrow	يستعير	erupt	يشور/ينفجر	rough	هائج
wise	حكيم	atmosphere	غلاف جوى	Jump out of	يقفز خارج
adventure	مغامرة	cave	كهف	rhino	وحيد القرن
hut	كوخ	Stone age	العصر الحجري	diver	غواص
Prepare for	يعد/يجهز ل	clay	طين صلبال	protect	يحمى
dinosaur	ديناصور	relax	يهذا	selfish	اناني
fossils	حفريات	famous	مشهور	shark	سمكة القرش
lizards	سحالي	wave	موجة	blog	منشور
theory	نظرية	Coral reef	شعاب مرجانية	improve	يحسن
weather	الطقس	wreck	حطام	Earn money	يكسب مالا
bones	عظام	instructor	مدرب/معلم	repair	يصلح
Die out	ينقرض	cough	يكح /يسعل	firefighter	رجل المكافحة
cool	بارد/يبرد	platform	رصيف محطة	include	يشمل
polite	مؤدب	Look after	يعتنى ب	Vote on	صوت على

السؤال الخامس (اختر الإجابة الصحيحة)

Mr Mohamed Fawzy

5-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Practice Test

- 1- What is the of the number 10 bus?
a arrival **b destination** c meeting d stop
- 2- Some students work in the holidays to some money.
a spend b lose c give **d earn**
- 3- Egypt can be hot in August.
a special b excellent **c especially** d specialize
- 4- We didn't have much money so we boughtclass tickets.
a first b express c stopping **d economy**
- 5- It is sad that some people become..... to computer games.
a upset b successful **c addicted** d hard
- 6- My uncle is the of a factory. He gives instructions to the workers.
a captain **b manager** c mechanic d secretary
- 7- The teacher wanted us to..... how the earth goes around the sun.
a explain b advise c regret d control
- 8- The canal is not natural. It is.....
a made **b man-made** c build d building
- 9- The shop isfor a new assistant. Perhaps Manal can work there.
a investing b writing c arranging **d advertising**
- 10- This email asks for my computer password. It must be a
a score b skin **c scam** d scan
- 11- My brother broke his phone and needs someone to..... it.
a make b explain **c repair** d report
- 12- It is hot today. It must be about forty.....
a degrees b dots c metres d marks
- 18- Don't be! You have already eaten a big ice cream.
a honest **b greedy** c hardworking d kind
- 14 -The came from space and landed in the sea.
a mountain b minaret **c meteorite** d monument
- 15- The showed us how to dive under water.
a hero b interviewer **c instructor** d inventor
- 16 -How many eggs do the farmer's chickens..... each day?
a lie b give **c lay** d put
- 17- People have used to make cups for hundreds of years.
a stone **b clay** c straw d sticks
- 18 -This book is..... I don't want to read it any more.
a special b excellent **c terrible** d greedy

1. The train stops at Luxor its way to Aswan.
a. with **b. on** c. in d. over
2. Yesterday, we the bus at school to go our house.
a. got into b. got off **c. got on** d. got out of
3. The assistant told us that our was at the front of the train.
a. cart **b. carriage** c. bus d. plane
4. You have bought many things! how much money did you.....?
a. book b. take **c. spend** d. give

WB • SB

5. Four touristsa car and took some photos of the statues in the park.
a. get into b. get off c. get on **d. get out of**
6. Welcome to Cairo. Pleasethe plane through the doors at the front.
a. get into **b. get off** c. get on d. get out of
7. Mayar's cousin is going to live in Cairo so she has bought a/an..... ticket
a. single b. only c. express d. return
8. Osama is coughing all the time. I think he has a problem with his.....
a. lungs b. legs c. arms d. hearts
9. Too much smoking can cause lung and heart.....
a. degrees **b. diseases** c. beats d. reasons
10. Maysa works very hard so I'm sure she'll the exams.
a. provide b. pass c. succeed **d. fail**
11. Volleyball is very game, you need to be fit to play it.
a. psychological b. mental **c. physical** d. nervous
12. The..... which helps you breathe is the lung.
a. member **b. organ** c. part d. group
13. Sameha heart operation and became better. LM
a. took **b. had** c. did d. made
14. His lungs were.....because of smoking LM
a. better **b. damaged** c. returned d. cured
15. my brother went to a good university and had a great.....
a. entertainment b. population **c. education** d. invitation
16.workers often have to wear boots and a helmet.
a. office b. special **c. manual** d. hand
17. Students in.....education do not go to technical schools
a. real **b. general** c. different d. technique
18. We are proud being Egyptians
a. to b. about **c. of** d. with
19. My father worked.....a big project in the new capital. LM
a. of b. in **c. on** d. out
20. The manager asked me to tell him about my work.....
a. exercise b. experiment **c. experience** d. exam
21. Some stars are made of.....
a. oil **b. gas** c. plastic d. metal
22. I..... if you could tell me how many solar systems there are.
a. want b. tell c. explain **d. wonder**
23. If you want to look at stars and planets in our solar system you can go to the WB
a. observatory b. laboratory c. theatre d. university
24. The teacher wanted us to..... how the earth goes around the sun.
a. explain b. advise c. regret d. control
25. Could you explain to me why I can't feel the earth.....
a. burn **b. turn** c. travel d. get

26. At night in the desert, you can sometimes see.....stars but they disappear very quickly!
a. shooting b. shopping c. shouting d. showing
27. moons usually go around.....
a. planets b. stars c. the sun d. the solar system
28. can look at the planets through a telescope.
a. Astronauts b. Astrologers c. Astronomers d. Astronomy
29. You can usually find trees and birds at an..... in the desert.
a. art gallery b. adventure c. oasis d. object
30.is a very hard white, black or pink rock used for building.
a. wood b. metal c. paper d. marble
31. Social media are websites used by people to..... SB
a. communicate b. change c. arrange d. allow
32. we can use mobile phone tomoney to or from a bank.
a. develop b. arrange c. transfer d. travel
33. Some messages on the internet are not real. They are from people who want to get information from you.
a. creams b. scans c. scams d. scores
34. The privacyon social networking sites make sure that only people who you know can see information.
a. messages b. settings c. sizes d. sites
35. a/an.....went into the house at night and stole a lot of gold.
a. reporter b. sailor c. robber d. engineer
36. There is a/an..... in the newspaper for a new computer game.
a. advertisement b. experiment c. development d. payment
37. The students have..... to see the teacher after the class.
a. arranged b. paid c. advertised d. traveled
38. It was summer and Ant wasfood for the winter.
a. eating b. collecting c. coming d. sleeping
39. Khadeeja was very upset after she lost her..... necklace.
a. woolen b. golden c. plastic d. wooden
40. Marwan asked to Mustafa's phone so he could call his mother..
a. lend b. give c. borrow d. see
41. A story with a moral has a.....
a. message b. sad ending c. happy ending d. no ending
42. It is a good idea to ask a wise person for
a. food b. wonders c. money d. advice
43. Dinosaurs are animals which have died.....
a. out b. off c. of d. on
- 44.The was about 8,000 years ago.
a. rock age b. rain age c. stone age d. snow age
45. Yassin stopped and rested in a.....when he was climbing the mountain
a. flat b. cave c. hotel d. school

46. what was the.....of the accident outside the museum?
a. cause b. reason c. course d. degree
47. The fishermen keep their equipment in small wooden.....on the beach
a. hats b. nuts c. cuts d. huts
49. is important because it gives us food to eat.
a. farming b. growing c. drinking d. reading
50. People have used to make cups for hundreds of years.
a. stone b. clay c. straw d. sticks
51. Theof the book was boring, but the end was very exciting.
a. last b. beginning c. closing d. building
52. dinosaurs are found as.....on earth now
a. shells b. fossils c. eggs d. coins
53.is something which comes from volcanoes.
a. wind b. cloud c. dust d. rain
54. Theshowed us how to dive under water.
a. hero b. interviewer c. instructor d. inventor
55. Have you been as interesting as Alexandria?
a. somewhere b. everywhere c. anywhere d. nowhere
56. A..... is a big, flat fish that lives at the bottom of the sea
a. stingray b. whale c. coral d. dolphin
57. -.....are the fastest fish in the world.
a. dolphins b. starfish c. sailfish d. whales
58.is a group of animals that live together in large groups
a. moral b. coal c. coral d. coffee
59. The said that he saw some beautiful coral under the sea.
a. diver b. driver c. player d. runner
60. The best place to see fish is in the old..... of a boat near the island.
a. bone b. work c. wreck d. stone
61. It was a..... to hear that nobody was hurt in the accident
a. belief b. relief c. shock d. sadness
62. There was a lot of..... when the tourists saw some dolphins following the boat.
a. development b. arrangement c. excitement d. advertisement
63. Don't go diving when the sea is.....
a. cool b. rough c. calm d. sunny

ملفات الحفظ

1. He booked a/an ticket to Aswan as he decided to return to Cairo by car.
a. one b. express c. single d. return
2. We didn't have much money, so we bought class ticket.
a. a first b. an express c. a sleeper d. an economy

3. We love to watch the beautiful from the train's window.
a. journey b. scene c. sight d. scenery
4. Excuse me, is Aswan the final of this train?
a. platform b. carriage c. destination d. express
5. We took a to cross from one side of the Nile to the other.
a. car b. ferry c. bicycle d. train
6. The tourist got.....a taxi and asked the driver to take him to the hotel.
a. into b. off c. on d. out of
7. The hotel room was cool because it has air.....
a. communication b. cleaning c. conditioning d. mail
8. we didn't have much money, so we bought.....class tickets.
a. economy b. first c. express d. stopping
9. His letter never reached its....as he didn't write the address correctly.
a. station b. building c. destination d. home
10. You can buy a lot of things on the internet if you are.....
a. online b. offline c. outline d. deadline
11. Do as I tell you, or you'll.....it later on.
a. regret b. intend c. arrest d. affect
12. My brother broke his phone and needs someone to.....it.
a. explain b. report c. repair d. make
13. Smoking causes.....
a. operations b. good health c. lung diseases d. sleep
14. Hany works hard and does good researches online. I know.....sure he will succeed
a. about b. for c. in d. With
15. I had an on my leg, and now I can walk again.
a. accident b. event c. operation d. invitation
16. Many young people are to social networking sites
a. addicted b. regretted c. changed d. stopped
17. The lights in our house needed to be repaired, so we called the
a. electrician b. mechanic c. firelighter d. manager
18. Some students work in the holidays to some money.
a. spend b. lose c. give d. earn
19. You ask for a/an.....when a car or a machine breaks down.
a. cleaner b. mechanic c. inspector d. manager
20. Thirtyof people in Amsterdam travel to work by bike.
a. number b. percent c. present d. more
21. Engineers wear..... to protect their heads in worksites.
a. gloves b. jackets c. helmets d. shoes
22. The earth is one of the eight planets in our.....system.
a. cellar b. solar c. molar d. sugar
23. is the study of the stars and planets.
a. Astrology b. Biology c. Astronomy d. Archaeology

24. A is a small piece of rock that is travelling through space.
a. solar system b. shooting star c. moon d. planet
25. A lot of ancient mosques have.....in the middle.
a. temples b. carriages c. hippos d. fountains
26. The mosque has a dome and two.....
a. minarets b. temples c. palaces d. monuments
27. The sphinx is a famous..... many tourists visit it.
a. fountain b. canal c. monument d. park
28.is the top of a building that is the shape of half a circle.
a. minaret b. dome c. monument d. temple
29. We visited Cairo and saw some famous paintings in the art.....
a. gallery b. pyramid c. castle d. fountain
30. There is a bigwhere the river goes over a cliff.
a. fall b. waterfall c. water cycle d. water drop
31. Is Lake Nasser natural or is it?
a. modern b. traditional c. Man-made d. personal
32. It's a source of pride for us that Egypt has got most of the world.....
a. galleries b. mountains c. monuments d. projects
33. The Taj Mahal has a beautiful whiteand four minarets.
a. dam b. dome c. pyramid d. temple
34.design buildings for us to work and live in.
a. Inspectors b. Architects c. Technicians d. Archaeologists
35. The use of computers in the world of business is an important.....
a. development b. accident c. government d. monument
36. I have.....my money to Alexandria bank.
a. arranged b. transferred c. advertised d. travelled
37. Egypt was the first Arab country.....the internet.
a. use b. used c. to use d. uses
38. Many jobs nowyou to know how to use social media.
a. refer b. transfer c. require d. request
39. Scientists try hard to use the.....technology in education.
a. latest b. later c. last d. least
40. The red chickens.....eggs every day.
a. lay b. take c. eat d. lie
41. Don't be..... You have much money.
a. honest b. greedy c. kind d. hardworking
42. They are.....because they received the news of their success.
a. content b. corrupt c. distant d. scared
43. When you feel content, you are.....
a. happy b. sad c. angry d. scared
44. A farmer found that his goose hada yellow egg.
a. lie b. laid c. lain d. lay

45. Shaimaa did not like the film. She thought it was
 a. happy b. exciting c. terrible d. interesting
46. It is a good idea to ask a.....person for advice.
 a. greedy b. foolish c. careless d. wise
47.are ideas that we aren't sure about.
 a. Developments b. Volcanoes c. Theories d. Monuments
48. When volcanoes ..., they put a lot of dust and gas in the atmosphere.
 a. interrupt b. erupt c. accept d. adapt
49. The manager warned me to.....out for things falling
 a. put b. work c. explain d. look
50. Mechanics need manyto understand how cars work.
a. skills b. education c. schools d. managers
51. The eartharound itself at 1,670 kilometres an hour.
a. turns b. runs c. shines d. sets
52. I think the Cairo tower should bethe list.
 a. at b. with c. on d. above
53. What was the.....of the accident ?
 a. building b. reason c. cause d. ambulance
54. The terrible smoke from the fire made me..... a lot.
 a. continue b. practise c. cough d. start
55. The heart is the..... that pumps blood around the body.
 a. member b. organ c. number d. skull
56. My elder brother isto work as a professor at university. What a wonderful it is !
a. proud b. bored c. addicted d. troubled
57. Look! It says "today's news" in the newspaper. This is a.....
a. Misprint b. misread c. mislead d. mistreat
58. The Science Museum has a of rock from the moon.
 a. glass b. peace c. piece d. cup
59. There are eight moving round the sun.
 a. plans b. plants c. planets d. planes
60. The train leaves from 6.
 a. carriage b. station c. pavement d. platform
61. I enjoy trains because I wake up in a different place.
 a. economy b. sleeper c. return d. stopping
62. When the sun shines on the moon, it's very
 a. warm b. cool c. cold d. hot
63. Shooting stars usually burn and disappear before they fall.....the earth.
 a. through b. under c. onto d. into
64. When you speak and behave in a nice way, you are.....
a. polite b. pilot c. impolite d. ugly
65. UNESCO helps to lookimportant sites.
 a. for b. out c. up d. after
66. I his name and thought he was called Tim instead of Tom.
 a. Misprint b. misread c. mislead d. mistreat
67. The Great Wall of China was used to keep people of the country
a. out b. in c. on d. at
68. You can on which ones should be on the final list of seven places.
 a. vet b. view c. vote d. vitamin

Mr Mohamed Fawzy

السؤال السادس (أعد كتابة الجمل باستخدام الكلمات)

6 -Rewrite the following sentences to give the same meaning:

- 1 "Stand up, please," the teacher said to Ali. (ordered)
The teacher ordered Ali to stand up.
- 2- Sami was cold last night. He wore a coat. (must)
sami must have been cold last night. He wore a coat.
- 3- Amr's arm hurts. Perhaps he broke it. (might)
Amr might have broken his arm
- 4- It is not possible that you saw Mona yesterday. She is in Paris. (can't)
You can't have seen Mona yesterday. She is in Paris
- 5- "Look out, Ahmed! A car is coming." Nabil said. (warned)
Nabil warned Ahmed that a car was coming.
- 6- I tried the fish at the restaurant, but I regret it. (shouldn't)
I shouldn't have tried the fish at the restaurant.
- 7- "You must stop smoking!" the doctor said to Hatem. (advised)
The doctor advised Hatem to stop smoking.
- 8 "What is the fastest way to Capital Bank?" (I asked)
I asked what the fastest way was to Capital Bank
- 9 I liked the book a lot, so I decided to read it again. (reread)
I liked the book a lot, so I decided to reread it
- 10- Perhaps if we see the teacher, she can help us with our homework. (might)
If I see the teacher, she might be able to help us with our homework.
- 11- What's the name of the biggest city in England? (like to know)
I'd like to know the name of the biggest city in England.
- 12- I'm not sure where Tarek is. Perhaps he's in the park. (might)
I'm not sure where Tarek is. He might be in the park.
- 13- Do you have as much water as you need? (enough)
Do you have enough water?
- 14- I didn't recognise your cousin so I didn't say hello. (if)
If I had recognised your cousin, I would have said hello.
- 15- If I see Sayed, perhaps I'll ask him to help me with my homework. (might)
If I see Sayed, I might ask him to help me with my homework.
- 16- I can't wait to go to the museum tomorrow. (look forward)
I am looking forward to going to the museum tomorrow.
- 17- I was ill, so I didn't go to work. (If)
If I hadn't been ill/If I had been well, I would have gone to work.

WB/SB /المحافظات

18. I've already arranged to visit the museum tomorrow. (visiting)
I'm visiting the museum tomorrow
19. Hend planned to spend the weekend in Alexandria. (going)
Hend is going to spend the weekend in Alexandria
20. My father promised to buy a tablet for my sister. (will)
My father will buy a tablet for my sister
21. We have arranged to take the sleeper train to Aswan. (taking)
We are taking the sleeper train to Aswan
23. What do you intend to study next year? (are)
What are you going to study next year

24. I am sure that he travelled by bus. (must)

He must have traveled by bus

25. I ate fish at the restaurant, but I regret it. (shouldn't)

I shouldn't have tried the fish at the restaurant

26. I didn't read all the questions before answering the exam. (should)

I should have read all the questions before answering the exam

27.. I bought an old car but I regret. (shouldn't)

I shouldn't have bought an old car

28.. I must have left my notebook at home. (sure)

I'm sure I left my notebook at home

29. Noha didn't do her homework (should)

Noha should have done her homework

30. The old man ate too much fat. (shouldn't)

The old man shouldn't have eaten too much fat

31. Hany bought the new mobile. I'm not sure (might)

Hany might have bought the new mobile

32. "Stand up, please," the teacher said to Ali. (ordered)

The teacher ordered Ali to stand up.

33. the doctor said to Hazem, "You must stop smoking" (advised)

The doctor advised Hazem to stop smoking.

34. "Keep working," said the teacher to the class. (encouraged)

The teacher encouraged the class to keep working.

35. "English is our favourite subject", my friends said to me (told)

My friends told me that English was their favourite subject.

36. "Don't touch the snake," Mona said to Ola. (warned)

Mona warned ola not to touch the snake

37. My sister wants to buy a book," said Ahmed. (Ahmed said)

Ahmed said that his sister wanted to buy a book.

38. "Would you like to read the book?" Randa said to Reem (invited)

Randa invited Reem to read the book

39. "I am learning how to swim " 'said Tarek. (Tarek said)

Tarek said that he was learning how to swim.

40. The new shop will open in two weeks' time," Sara said to us. (told)

Sara told us that the new shop would open in two weeks' time.

41. "The museum is next to the park," Mr El-Baz said to Omar (told)

Mr El-Baz told Omar that the museum was next to the park.

42. My uncle said , " I will come again next week." That

My uncle said that he would come again the following week

43. " I watched the match yesterday." Ramy said to Magdy

Ramy told magdy that he had watched the match the day before

44. "When will you return from Paris,?" (My wife asked)

My wife asked me when I would return from Paris.

Mr Mohamed Fawzy

45. " Will you finish your homework before dinner". (Kareem asked his sister)

Karim asked his sister if she would her homework before dinner

46. "why do you come late, Hossam? " the teacher said. (asked)

The teacher asked Hossam Why He came late.

47. "How long does it take you to get to school?" (Warda asked me)

Warda asked me how long it took me to get to school.

48. Do all the planets have moons? aya said to me (asked)

Aya asked me if all the planets had moons

49. "Where are you going on holiday in the summer?" (I asked Youssef)

I asked youssef where he was going on holiday in the summer

50. I asked Nehal about her address. (said to)

I said to Nehal " what is your address" ?

51. " Will you take me to the new capital, dad?" (Areej asked)

Areej asked her dad if he would take her to the new capital.

52. "How many planets are there?" Yunis asked

Yunis asked how many planets there were.

53. They have collected a lot of money for the charity. (been)

A lot of money has been collected for the charity (by us).

54. Salwa hasn't done her homework yet. . (been)

Salwa's homework hasn't been done yet.

55. They have planted trees along the river. (been)

Trees have been planted along the river.

56. Archaeologists have found an ancient building in the desert. (been)

An ancient building has been found in the desert (by archaeologists)

57. The police have closed the road to the airport. (been)

The road to the airport has been closed by the police

58. I can't go on holiday because I don't have enough time. (If)

If I had enough time , I could go on holiday

59. I advise you not to tell lies. (If)

If I were you , I wouldn't tell lies.

60. I'm very short. so, I can't play basketball. (If)

If I weren't short/were tall, I could play basketball

61. if you learnt Japanese, you would perhaps get a job in Tokyo. (might)

if you learnt Japanese, you might get a job in Tokyo

62. Heba doesn't play tennis well, so she doesn't get a medal. (If)

If Heba played tennis well, she would get a medal

63. If you didn't get help, you would be in trouble. (Unless)

Unless you got help, you would be in trouble.

64. First, I finished my work, then I went to the club. (until)

I didn't go to the club until I had finished my work.

65. First, I studied my lessons, then I did my homework. (After)

After I had studied my lessons, I did my homework.

66.First ,we booked the tickets. then we went to the concert. (before)

We had booked the tickets before we went to the concert.

67.After we had visited the museum, we had lunch. (until)

We didn't have lunch until we had visited the museum.

66.We visited the museum, then we went home. (After)

After we had visited the museum, we went home.

67.After he had studied the lessons, he went out for a walk.(until)

He didn't go for a walk until he had studied the lessons

68.The lesson started, then Dina arrived in the classroom. (when)

The lesson had started, when Dina arrived in the classroom

69.After chasing the thief, the police arrested him. (before)

The police had chased the thief, before they arrested him.

70.She punished her son because he had not told the truth. (If)

If her son had told the truth, she wouldn't have punished him

71.They played indoor games as the weather was very bad. (If)

If the weather hadn't been very bad, they wouldn't have played indoor games

72.I was ill, so I didn't go to work. (If)

If I hadn't been ill/If I had been well, I would have gone to work.

73.I didn't have much money, so I didn't buy that expensive toy. (If)

If I had had more money, I would have bought that expensive toy.

74.I forgot my library card. I couldn't borrow a book. (If)

If I hadn't forgotten my library card, I would have been able to borrow a book.

75.I was tired. I didn't watch the documentary about dinosaurs. (If)

If I hadn't been tired, I would have watched the documentary about dinosaurs

76.. My father drove me to school so I arrived on time

If my father hadn't driven me to school, I wouldn't have arrived on time.

77.I don't have a holiday, so I don't go to the beach with my friends.

If I had a holiday, I would go to the beach with my friends.

78.You should eat healthy food.. (If)

If I were you , I would eat healthy food.

79.We didn't hear the news as we didn't listen to the radio.

If we had listened to the radio, we would have heard the news.

80. Do your homework , or the teacher will be angry with you. (If)

If you don't do your homework, the teacher will be angry with you

81.she must practice well or she won't play the piano.(if)

If she doesn't practice well , she won't play the piano.

82.Hend was careful, so she didn't have an accident. (Unless)

Unless hend had been careful, she would have had an accident.

83.This mobile is too expensive for me to buy. (If)

If this mobile weren't too expensive , I would buy it.

84."Did Aya watch the film at the cinema yesterday?" (Manal asked her friend)

Manal asked her friend if she had watched the film at the cinema the day before

85.The officer said, " Where did the accident happen?" (wanted to know)

The officer wanted to know where the accident had happened.

86.Ali didn't go to school on time. It's possible he missed the bus.
(might)

All might have missed the bus. He didn't go to school on time